MORKEL

A Remarkable South African Family

André Theron Morkel
and co-authors
Onverwacht has remained in the Morkel family for more than 300 years and I am privileged to live on the original farm, now called Die Bos, as part of the 10th generation. Today Morkels are found all over South Africa and in various countries around the world. It is endearing to see a collection of stories such as this, about our family dating back from Stamvader Philip Morkel and his wife Catharina Pasman.

We welcome a book that captures our families’ rich history and undertakings throughout the generations.

Sarel Johannes Potgieter Morkel, (Kleinjan)

Die Bos (10th Gen)
André and his co-writers have compiled a book with many fascinating stories about the Morkel family. It is however not only Morkel family history but history in a much broader sense coming alive. The book contains many interesting anecdotes as well as photographs, sketches and maps that complement the stories and is compiled in such a way that it is a pleasure to read.

Daniel Malan Jacobs

The Morkel family is an outstanding family who bats above their weight. This classic book by André Morkel has placed the Morkel family in history. It is spiced with family stories: from arguing over who sits where in church, to sporting heroes and having pigeons flying the score back home. The author is a pioneer, breathed life into people and one gets to know personalities. Whether you are a historian, genealogist, casual reader or Morkel descendant you will find it hard to put this book down.

A.M. (André) van Rensburg

André Morkel has researched this family with diligence, honesty, and typical Morkel determination. He brings to life examples of ancestors covering more than three centuries of his family life; a microcosm of the European settlement of South Africa, its hardships, its achievements, the issues facing them, their responses, and their anecdotes. It’s a story of which the Morkels can justly be proud. Your Morkel family history has made a substantial contribution, and makes delightful reading.

Roy Lourens

Morkel family members made their impact and contribution, be it on the battlefield, the cricket or on the rugby field. The stories of their lives, mostly embedded in a stable family environment, are told by an ardent researcher, one with compassion and an honest interest in his family’s history as well as pride in his heritage, which can be traced back to Germany in the 16th century. The Morkel family book adheres to all the requirements for an interesting and reader-friendly presentation.

Helena Liebenberg
MORKEL
A Remarkable South African Family

André Theron Morkel

and co-authors:
Philip William Morkel
Gerritt Morkel
Cathy Morkel
Fil Morkel
Ron Morkel
Philip Morkel
Rozanne Winter née Morkel
Gerda van Niekerk née Morkel
Pete Morkel
Carl Anton Morkel
Margaret Thebus
Ebrahim Rhoda
Rodney Rhoda
Timothy Visser

Are you a Morkel and not in the book or on the website?
Do you have family history and stories to share? About you, your parents, grandparents and further back?

We would gladly hear from you. Contact us via the website or directly at at@morkel.net
I am an eighth generation descendant from Stammvader Philip Morkel, born and raised on the farm Altena bordering The Strand. It is a portion of the original farm Onverwacht settled by Philip Morkel in 1713.

I could pursue a longstanding interest in family history after retirement as Professor of Management at the University of Western Australia. It started in 1961 when Philip William Morkel published his pioneering book. He encouraged my wife Barbara and I to take his work further. We began with a website, initially focused on our specific line, but it soon attracted broader family. Both the website and our book are opportunistic — they reflect what is available, and there are huge gaps. There are many family trees scattered throughout the book to identify who we are talking about, but our focus is primarily family history, not genealogy. Our website contains possibly the most complete genealogy available for the family, but that is also very incomplete, with large gaps, particularly post mid 1900s.

Thanks to our co-authors and contributors. The book is so much richer with your generous input. Thanks to Margaret Thebus; Ron Morkel; Gerritt Morkel; Lou Morkel; Cathy Morkel; Jen Morkel; Fil Morkel; Philip Morkel and Rozanne Winter; Carl Anton Morkel; Pete Morkel; Ebrahim and Rodney Rhoda; Timothy Visser; Peter Weedon; and Jan Malan. Thanks also to Gary Brockman; Jean Wetselaar; Hennie Morkel; Daniel Morkel; Danie Morkel; Charl Morkel; Karen Cilliers; Nita Morkel; Vivian Watts; Stadler and Vida van Zyl.

Thanks to members of SA Genealogie for guidance. Special thanks to Daniel Malan Jacobs; Roy Lourens; André van Rensburg and Helena Liebenberg for kind words about the book and to Hendrik Louw; Johan van Breda and Marietta van Zyl.

Thanks to our son André Retief Morkel for creating and operating the website and to my wife Barbara and sons for ongoing support. Barbara, Jo Gregg and Neil Lewis did the proofreading and I asked contributors and family to check facts, such as names and dates. Thanks Nickey Cilliers, our publisher, for arranging printing and distribution. As always, I remain responsible for the inevitable errors.

André Theron Morkel
A Tribute to Philip William Morkel

g3 PHILIP (PHIL) WILLIAM MORKEL, born in 1907, was a successful businessman who founded a chain of furniture stores during the early to mid-1900s. He worked with professional archivists and genealogists from the Cape Archives and published *The Morkels: Family History and Family Tree* in 1961.

Many of our stories and the core genealogy come from this source. Oom Phil, as I came to know him, encouraged us to take his work further, and he generously provided his book at below cost to those interested. Unfortunately it has been out of print for many years and he is no longer with us. I have sought to acknowledge him and his book wherever I made use of it.

Phil Morkel wrote about the family, but not about himself. Hopefully one day someone with access will write an account of the life of this business pioneer. He created a chain of successful stores at a time when few of Afrikaans descent were active in business.

Phil Morkel (right) presenting his book to the Cape Archives in 1961.
*Source: P.W. Morkel*
A hundred years after Philip Morkel landed at the Cape, there were four branches of the family. Only three of them had male descendants. It provides a structure for our book.

**Map of the Morkel Family and their Farms**

A hundred years after Philip Morkel landed at the Cape, there were four branches of the family. Only three of them had male descendants. It provides a structure for our book.
MORKEL

CONTENTS

Part 1  The First Three Generations
1 From Germany to the Cape  3
2 Philip and Maria Biebouw  11
3 Philip and Catharina Pasman  13
4 Church Windows and Crest  19
5 The Wreck of the Schonenberg  23
6 Willem Morkel and Helena Catharina Malan  33
7 The Farms  39
8 Onverwacht/Die Bos  43
9 Dovecote  51
10 The British Came, Left, Returned and Stayed  55
11 We Need a Town and a Church  61

Part 2  Sport
12 The Rugby Morkels  69
13 The Cricket Morkels  79

Part 3  Descendants of Willem Morkel of Voorburg
14 Willem to Pieter Loreth Morkel  87
15 Goldfields Pioneers  91
16 Lammie Morkel and Family  99
17 Arthur L. Rubidge Morkel  103
18 Clifford Earle Southey Morkel  113
19 Ronald Norman Morkel  117

Part 4  Descendants of Daniel Johannes Morkel of Onverwacht
20 Three hundred years at Die Bos  129
21 Breaking the Pledge  143
Part 5  Descendants of Hercules Morkel of Welgelegen

33  Hercules Morkel  207
34  The Overberg Farms  209
35  Antonie Charles Morkel and Family  211
36  Beaufort West Morkels  219
37  Samuel and Dolphina Morkel and Family  223
38  Margaret Lodewyk  229
39  I.D. Morkel Church Founder  233

Part 6  Finally

40  The Two Rhoda Families Muslim and Christian  239
41  The Morkel Connection  243
42  Naming the Children  247
43  Origin of the Morkel Name  249
44  Deep Ancestry  251
45  Facts and Stats  253
46  Epilogue  257

Bibliography  259
General Index  261
Index of Morkels’ Listed  263
Endnotes  271
Stamvader

Philip Morkel, who arrived at the Cape in 1708, was the progenitor — in Afrikaans, *Stamvader* (pronounced stumfahder with the u as in sun) — of all the Morkels in Southern Africa.

VOC — Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie 1602 — 1800
United (Dutch) East India Company

Genealogy Symbols

* born
≈ baptised
x married
xx second marriage
÷ divorced
† died

Family Tree Numbering

We use the De Villiers alpha-numeric system where generations are alphabetical order and siblings numerical.

Thus *Stamvader* Philip Morkel is *a1*, his son and fourth child Willem is *b4* and so on. I am 8th generation, 4th child, i.e. *h4*. Tracing my line through the eight generations in this code yields: *a1b4c6d7e1f4g9h4*. Be aware that different relatives will inevitably have the same final two digit code, for example there would be many other *h4* Morkels, other than myself, but they will each have a unique full combination code.
The VOC had a Buitepos (Outpost) at Hottentots Holland. In 1700 visiting VOC Commissioner Valckenier granted the land to Governor W.A. van der Stel where he built a model farm Vergelegen. A petition against the Governor and his cronies was successful. He was dismissed and summoned back to Holland. Vergelegen, and also the adjoining farm Onverwacht of his Gardener Jan Hartog, were sold at public auction in 1709. Catharina Pasman inherited Onverwacht in 1713 and settled there with her husband Philip Morkel.
Part 1

The First Three Generations

1  From Germany to the Cape  3
2  Philip and Maria Biebouw  11
3  Philip and Catharina Pasman  13
4  Church Windows and Crest  19
5  The Wreck of the Schonenberg  23
6  Willem Morkel and Helena Catharina Malan  33
7  The Farms  39
8  Onverwacht/Die Bos  43
9  Dovecote  51
10  The British Came, Left, Returned and Stayed  55
11  We Need a Town and a Church  61
First three Generations at the Cape

Philip (?) Morkel
Germany

Stamvader a1 Philip Morkel
1677 – 1735

Maria Biebouw
1692 – 1713
1st wife

b1 Elisabeth Morkel
1711 – 1752

Stamvader a1 Philip Morkel
1677 – 1735

Catharina Pasman
1691 – 1764
2nd wife

Helena Catharina Malan
1736 – 1825
2nd wife

b4 Willem Morkel
1718 – 1788

b3 Sophia Margaretha
Morkel 1715 – 1788x J.A,
Myburgh Meerlust

b2 Willem Philipsz Morkel
Stamvader Philip’s brother

Helena Catharina Malan
1736 – 1825
2nd wife

Philip Hendrik
Morkel 1760 – 1831

c5 Willem Morkel
1761 – 1821

c6 Daniel Johannes
Morkel 1764 – 1825

c7 Hercules
Morkel 1767 - 1808

c8 Helena Catharina
Morkel x P.A.
Myburgh
1 From Germany to the Cape

Stamvader a1 Philip Morkel arrived at the Cape on the VOC returnship Oosterstein in 1708. He was a constapel, in charge of the gunpowder and guns on board, and was listed as born in Hamburg. We know quite a bit about his life at the Cape but his youth and family in Germany remain a mystery, as well as why he joined the VOC for perilous voyages to the East and settled at the Cape, which at that time was a fledgling company-dominated settlement in wild Africa.

VOC Archives

APART FROM employment information (dates of voyages, pay rates etc), the VOC records in the Nationaal Archief in The Hague listed Philip Morkel as born in Hamburg but little else. The archives also contained a copy of Philip’s will made in 1734 while he was in ill health (enigszins ziekelijk), shortly before his death in 1735. In the will it is stated that he was born in Hamburg. But again there is no birth date or any other useful information about his origins in Germany. Philip also had an unmarried brother, Willem Morkel who was a surgeon (chirurgijn, or opperbarbier) on the VOC ships Mijnden, Arion and Groenswaart and who later stayed at Onverwacht, Philip’s farm in the Hottentots Holland. Willem was also listed as born in Hamburg. In one entry he is recorded as being Willem Philipsz Morkel. The ‘sz’ in the middle name is significant because it indicates that he was the son of Philip Morkel, thus revealing their father’s name. The use of ‘sz’ is a Dutch practice, not German, therefore, it was not handed down from earlier German ancestors. Thus, while we retain a question mark, it is very likely that their father was indeed Philip.
Philip's Birth Date Mystery

THE MORKEL Genealogies were compiled from South African sources and not surprisingly, did not list a birth date for Philip, who was born in Germany. South African Genealogies of GISA list his birth date as 27 February 1677. With no source provided, the origin of this date remains a tantalising puzzle — efforts to locate the source were unsuccessful.

Hamburg Archives

THE GENEALOGICAL Society of Hamburg could not help, except to produce a 30 year old letter from author P. W. Morkel making the same inquiry. From a list of researchers that they provided, I contracted retired archivist Herr Johannes Vogel to search the Hamburg archives for Philip, Willem and their parents during the period around 1670 to 1690. His search included:

1. The archives of the five Evangelical/Lutheran churches in Hamburg at the time.
2. Citizen Records (Freeman’s oath books) from 1529 to 1732.
3. Marriage records for the City.
4. Death records for the City.
5. Hamburg Government records (Senat Protokollen).

His search was unfortunately negative. He could not find a single Morkel name in the archives — the first Morkel name in Hamburg appeared in the 1800s.

Morkel Families in Germany

USING DIRECTORIES, we found approximately 40 Morkels in Germany. We visited Professor Arnd Morkel, Rector of the University of Trier, and he showed us his family tree going back to Anthonius Morckel from Kirchgöns in 1633. Plotting Morkel names in the White Pages of the German Telekom, we found two “hot spots” — around Butzbach, about 60 kms north of Frankfurt and a number of small towns collectively named the Brachttal, about the same distance north east from Frankfurt in Hessen. There were also one or two Morkels in cities such as Frankfurt, Munich and Dusseldorf. Small towns interested us more because it was more likely that the families would have lived there for generations. I wrote letters to all and received about eight replies.

The most interesting response was from Carsten Morkel, then a university student, of Pohlgöns, a small town close to Butzbach. He had traced his family back to about 1610. Through him, I met Herr Meyerhahn the local genealogy enthusiast (retired
school teacher) who was entrusted with the registers of the Butzbach *Evangelische Markus-Kirchengemeinde*. Entries in these books went back to 1561 and showed water stains from being buried during the Thirty Years’ War from 1618 to 1648. The Reformation commenced in 1517 when Martin Luther pinned his famous 95 theses to the door of the Castle church in Wittenberg. While there were several Morkel names in the books, none connected with our Stamvader Philip. We met with several Morkel families in the Brachttal, and had the registers of several churches in the region searched, but with no success.

Through Herr Bodo Heil I located an article by Melchior⁷ from the Hessen Genealogy Journal where the Morkel family of Butzbach is traced back to 1383, using tax records. The first mention of the family was Markel from *Howysel* (Hoch-Weisel is today part of Butzbach town), always without a first name, and mentioned first in 1383, and thereafter at regular intervals until 1436 at which time he was worth 170m (mark?) taxable capital, which for that time represented reasonable wealth.

The first time the name is spelled “Morkel” appears in the sixth generation after Markel of *Howysel*. Emmerich Morkel is listed in 1535 as the younger mayor (*jüngerer Bürgermeister*), and also in 1548 and 1554. A House-Mark⁸ is available for 1535 and 1548. He owned farmland and vineyards in Butzbach. His taxable capital amounted to 360m by 1553. He died in 1554 and was married to Else, who died 1581.
Descendants of Emmerich Morkel also used the spelling Morckel on occasion. However, in the Butzbach church registers the name is consistently spelled Morkel. This is at variance with Arnd’s family from the same area who used the Morckel spelling. Melchior’s records continue until 1594, and sadly contain names of several children who died from the plague.

The Thirty Years’ War

DESPITE SOME uncertainty, a birth date between 1677 to 1683 for Philip Morkel sounds reasonable.

In what kind of society did he and Willem and before them, their parents, grow up?

In the 1500’s Germany was a fragmented collection of larger and smaller principalities, cities and lands with considerable independence, within the ‘Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation. According to one source, it consisted of 7 electoral princes, 4 archbishops, 46 bishops, 83 other spiritual leaders, 145 counts and lords and approximately 83 imperial towns. Germany entered a recession in the 1590s, followed by a general downturn in the European economy in the 1610s and 1620s. Social and political tensions erupted in peasant revolts as well as social unrest in towns. Average temperatures dropped with severe crop failures in what has been termed a 'little ice age’ — captured in the icy winter scenery in paintings of the time. Starvation, destitution, burning of witches and infanticide were not uncommon.

A combination of tensions within the Holy Roman Empire and among the states of Europe produced a confused series of conflicts from 1618 to 1648 known as the Thirty Years’ War.

The German economy and society were devastated. Various armies marched through the countryside, looting and killing all in their way. The area around Frankfurt and Butzbach was in the centre of these conflicts. Peasants and farmers lived precarious lives. When they fled to walled cities and towns such as Butzbach for protection, they lacked the ability to raise crops and the congestion caused diseases and the plague. Between one third and two thirds of the population perished. The destruction of buildings and livestock by unpaid troops through foraging and the use of scorched earth policies caused immense damage to an already fragile subsistence economy. Eventually a peace was negotiated in 1648 as the 'Treaty of Westphalia', setting institutions in place which endured until the abolition of the empire in Napoleon’s time in 1806.
After the peace of Westphalia, the agony continued. King Louis XIV of France sought to extend his territory north-east and repeatedly attacked the Rhineland after 1674. In the Palatinate, in Baden and Württemberg, towns were burned, crops destroyed or requisitioned and peasants driven from their homes. The Rhineland was to be turned into a desert so that it could not be used as a granary by the enemies of France. Ruins from the French predatory wars were still smouldering when the Hessian states were overrun and devastated anew in the War of Spanish Succession. Again they paid dearly for their strategic position.

Hamburg escaped much of the devastation of the period. It had flourished as part of the Hanseatic League in the 12th century, and remained an active trading post even after the League declined at the end of the Middle Ages. The Hamburg Stock Exchange was founded in 1558, the Bank of Hamburg in 1619 and a protective convoy started in 1662 to protect merchant ships on the open seas. It protected itself by taking a political neutral position while also fortifying itself. Despite the devastating Thirty Years’ War, Hamburg was able to continue to grow in economic importance. Thus, if the Morkel family lived in Hamburg, they would have escaped much of the hardships of the war and subsequent troubles.

During this time of hardship in Germany, neighbouring Holland experienced a flourishing economy based largely on the VOC (Dutch East India Company) trade in spices and textiles with Batavia and the Far East. The VOC needed staff, particularly at officer level and the Dutch locals who qualified would have preferred to stay at home (or become top ranking officials in Batavia), leaving the perilous voyages to Germans and Danes, keen for work. The Dutch had a strong relationship with Hamburg which harboured Dutch merchants escaping wars in Holland during the late 1500s and they had a recruiting office there.

**Did they want to be found?**

THUS FAR we have found the following:

1. Philip and Willem Morkel are both listed in the VOC records as born in Hamburg. Our search failed to find any trace of Philip, his brother Willem, their parents or any Morkel family in that city at that time.

2. We found about 40 Morkel families living at present in the Hessen countryside near Frankfurt. At least two families could be traced back in Butzbach and
neighbouring Pohlgöns and Kirchgöns to the early 1600s, and we found Morkels in Butzbach as far back as 1383.

Perhaps our search in Hamburg was inadequate, and that some time in the future the connection in the Hamburg Archives will be found. But maybe Philip and his brother Willem came from elsewhere, possibly Hessen, and came to Hamburg to join the VOC. At this stage we do not know. The work in Hamburg was quite extensive and done by an experienced archivist. Philip and Willem were both educated and trained in their profession, so they would likely have appeared in documents of the time. Thus there is a probability that the brothers came from elsewhere, such as the Frankfurt region. If so, why did they list Hamburg as their birthplace?

One can only speculate, but it is possible that we could not find Philip and Willem because they did not want to be found. In those days it was not always easy to move, particularly if you served in the army of a feudal lord. If for some reason (and it may have been quite honourable, but not approved by the count) you ‘disappeared’, it may have been best to leave the country and join a ship for far-away lands. The VOC was the foremost employer of the time and recruited in Hamburg. To cover your tracks you gave your place of birth as Hamburg, one of the old Hanseatic league free cities not ruled by a feudal lord. This is speculation but it would explain the absence of any reference to Morkel in the Hamburg archives.

The treaty of Westphalia in 1648 was only partly effective, and unrest continued for many years thereafter. If they were from Hessen, it would have been in this collapsed society that Philip and Willem’s parents were born — probably around the 1650’s. In spite of the economic hardship of the time, there is evidence that Philip and Willem’s parents were reasonably well off. Philip’s brother, Willem was a surgeon, (chirugijn or opperbarbier) who obtained his medical knowledge through an apprenticeship, and who belonged to a strong Guild with strict rules and demands. Candidates were between 16 and 18 years old and needed parents with sufficient means to pay for a four year apprenticeship 12. Likewise, Philip as an artillerist would also have been supported by his parents during his training.

It is quite possible that the brothers’ parents would have encouraged their sons to move to a better life. This notion is reinforced by oral tradition 13 within our family, that the two brothers came to the Cape ‘because their father did not want them to serve in the army’. If this is so, then it is somewhat ironic that Philip was employed by the VOC as a soldier, probably because he was trained in that craft. He was a constapel i.e. a gunner and in charge of the gunpowder and guns aboard the ship. At the Cape he served as an artillerist before settling down as a farmer.
Pay rates of the VOC were notoriously poor. Even though officers had better food and accommodation than the ordinary seamen and soldiers, the journeys uncomfortable and extremely hazardous. The constapel slept with the weapons and gunpowder to guard them. He was thus the only crew member apart from the captain that had his own cabin.

Constapel was a middle rank position — better than ordinary seamen but paid the same as a boatswain's mate and the cook. Somewhat surprising, the constapel was a member of the ship's crew and not part of the soldiers which were also on the ship. Some ten years later Willem also sailed with the VOC at a higher rate of pay as opperbarbier. Willem completed several journeys and finally retired on brother Philip's farm Onverwacht at the Cape.

It is plausible that Philip wanted to get out of Germany and signing up with the VOC was his means. He took the first opportunity to leave the ship and settled at the Cape, which at that time was a small unattractive company-dominated settlement. As soon as he could, he resigned from the VOC and took up farming. He had achieved his goals to leave Germany and military life.

Philip arrived at the Cape on the returnship Oosterstein from Batavia in 1708. It is likely that he was on that ship when it left Wielingen, Holland on 13 October 1704. The Oosterstein arrived at the Cape on 7 March 1705 and departed for Batavia on 8 July 1705. Thus Philip had most likely been at the Cape for four months in 1705. The ship remained in the Far East for 2 years and 4 months probably trading in the region, before returning via the Cape to Holland. It belonged to the Zeeland Chamber of the VOC and sailed out of Wielingen. From Holland to the Cape the ship had to go through the doldrums around the equator with good chance of being becalmed. They had 297 men on board and the voyage to the Cape took 145 days — almost 5 months. Returning from Batavia was quicker, 51 days, with 159 men on board.

Philip married during the 82 days he was at the Cape, returned to Holland in April 1708 on the Oosterstein to arrange his discharge. Philip returned to settle at the Cape on the Noordbeek on 2 February 1709, after a voyage of 136 days. He stayed with the Company at the Cape, as artillerist at the Castle, firing the signalling cannon greeting visiting ships. They would not have used ear-plugs or -muffs and he most likely had hearing problems for the rest of his life.
Arrival at the Cape: 1691 or 1708?

The arrival date in 1708 for Stamvader Philip Morkel is well documented. However, there are reports in articles and websites about the family that he arrived at the Cape much earlier — in, or before, 1691.

This comes from the 1894 genealogy of old Cape families by C.C. de Villiers:

‘The Stamvader of this family was Philip Morkel, of Hamburg, in 1691 citizen of Stellenbosch, married to Maria Bibon, widow of Hercules Verdeau, and remarried 17 September 1713 to Catharina Pasman.’

Historian George McCall Theal states:

‘According to the census of 1691, corrected by entries in the church registers, the most notable burghers in the Cape district were: (a long list including) ‘Morkel, Philip, with wife.’

Thus both de Villiers and Theal wrongly place Philip as already established at the Cape in 1691.

Apart from the date error, de Villiers and Theal also incorrectly have Maria Biebouw (there are several spellings of her name, including Bibon) as the widow of Hercules Verdeau. Hercules was married to Maria Huibeaux, a similar sounding name, but a different person.
2 Philip and Maria Biebouw

*Stamvader* Philip Morkel arrived at the Cape on the VOC returnship *Oosterstein* on 30 January 1708. During his stay of eighty two days at the Cape he married Maria Biebouw, and then proceeded on to Holland on 23 April. He obtained his discharge and returned to the Cape on the *Noordbeek*, arriving 2 June 1709. He obtained permission to stay at the Cape, became artillerist at the Castle, and settled down to a married life with Maria.

When Philip arrived at the Cape, the Dutch had already been there for 56 years. By then the worst hardships of the early days were over. Farmers, particularly around Stellenbosch were already well established and some were accumulating a measure of wealth. However, there were still many drawbacks.

It was a small, (in 1707 there were 3,760 non-indigenous people, of which 646 were VOC employees, 1,719 free burghers and 1,395 slaves), remote (more than four months sailing from Holland) settlement completely controlled by the VOC. It would have had the characteristics of a company town. Men outnumbered women almost two to one. They were mainly former sailors and soldiers of the VOC. The Company paid poorly and recruited from the lower strata in Holland. There were obviously also better class people at the Cape (including our Philip), but they were outnumbered.

It was a rough place. The Cape was a cost centre where expenditures had to be kept to a minimum and the Company with its monopoly exercised stifling controls. A relatively small group of French Huguenot refugees who came to the Cape in the late 1680s provided much needed culture and diversity. For Philip Morkel, the Cape, rough and primitive as it was, would have been preferable to life in Germany or perilous voyages to the East.
**Maria Biebouw**

PHILIP MORKEL married Maria Biebouw, then sixteen, on 25 March 1708. She was the daughter of Detlef Biebouw, who came from Mecklenburg in Germany, most likely during the 1680s, during the reign of Governor Simon van der Stel. Detlef is mentioned for the first time as corporal in 1683. In the records there are several spellings for the name — Biebouw, Bibou, Bibon and even a French version — Bibault. He was illiterate and signed his name with a cross.

Her mother was Willemijntje Ariëns de Wit, who married Detlef on 24 December 1688. She was one of eight orphan girls sent from Rotterdam, because of the shortage of females in the fledgling colony. Maria was the middle child of three surviving children. Her father died in 1695 when she was three years old, and her mother married Jacob Pleunis in the same year. In 1707 the family was living in the Stellenbosch district.

Philip and Maria’s daughter, Elisabeth, was baptised on 18 January 1710. A second child, Willem was baptised on 3 July 1712. Maria (and also baby Willem) died in 1713 (probably in the smallpox epidemic of that year) and, as required, an inventory of their joint estate was lodged with the Authorities. It was modest, reflecting Philip’s salary as employee of the Company. The couple owned a house at the Cape, four male slaves, one female slave with two small daughters, ten empty wine leaguers, four beddings (stuffed sacks used as mattresses and bedlinen — not the frames), a chest of drawers and diverse small goods, to a total of 8,560 guilders. They owed 6,500 guilders leaving 2,060 guilders net in the estate. Philip was already married to Catharina Pasman when the inventory was lodged.

Daughter Elisabeth married Wouter de Vos, formerly of Groll, Holland, on 5 September 1728 when she was 17. Her husband died three years later and, from him, she inherited a substantial estate of four farms (including Libertas, the former farm of Adam Tas). She re-married Jan Louw, grandson of Stams vader Jan Pieterzoon Louw, on 11 May 1732. The Louw and Morkel families were interconnected several times in the years to follow, starting with two of their granddaughters marrying Daniel Johannes Morkel in 1793 and his nephew Willem in 1807.
3 Philip and Catharina Pasman

Shortly after Maria died, Philip married Catharina Pasman on 27 September 1713. They settled on the farm Onverwacht in the Hottentots Holland. The former owners, Hendrik Elbertsz and Margaretha Pasman (Catharina’s sister) had died in the smallpox epidemic of 1713. Her mother, Sophia Pasman, inherited the farm and she allowed Philip and Catharina to farm there. In 1718 it became Philip’s property and it has been passed on in the family, father to son, for more than 300 years — a South African record.

PHILIP AND Catharina had two children, b3 Sophia Margaretha, christened 1 September 1715, and b4 Willem, christened 25 December 1718. b1 Elisabeth, his daughter from his first marriage stayed with them at Onverwacht until she married Wouter de Vos at seventeen years of age, on 5 September 1728. b3 Sophia Margaretha was then thirteen and b4 Willem almost ten.

Stamvader a1 Philip died on 12 April 1735, aged 58 years. His wife, Catharina Pasman, christened 17 August 1691, was 43. Their children b3 Sophia and b4 Willem were twenty and seventeen respectively. Daughter b3 Sophia Margaretha married Johannes Albertus Myburgh on 10 February 1743, at the age of 28, eight years after her father’s death. She became the matriarch of the Myburgh farm Meerlust along the Eerste River, on the way to Stellenbosch. In later years, there were several marriages between the Morkel and Myburgh families.

Philip Morkel is listed under the Stellenbosch Dragonders (dragoons or militia) captained by Jan Oberholzer in 1715, 1716, 1718, 1720 and 1721. He was not called to serve after 1721 being Heemraad of Stellenbosch for 1722 and 1723, and this automatically released him from military service. He fulfilled this role from 1726 to
1730 (except for 1728), as can be seen in the resolution books kept by the *Landdrost* and *Heemraaden* for Stellenbosch in the Cape archives. In 1722 the *Landdrost* was Marthinus Bergh and the *Heemraaden* were Pieter van der Byl, Adam Tas, Jan Louw, Wouter de Vos, Theunis Botha, and Philip Morkel. Later at the sale of goods on Adam Tas’s farm, Philip bought some sheep and a *koornharp* (winnower) 29.

A document 30, signed by Philip Morkel in 1722 shows that he was literate. While it was drawn up and written by a notary, it is clearly and fluently signed by Philip ‘in his own hand’. It acknowledges that Claudina Lombaar, widow of David du Buisson could be granted land adjoining *Onverwacht*. It concludes ‘...en hebbe dit eigenhandighe geteekent in mijne hofstede Onverwacht den 20 September 1722’ (and signed this by my own hand at my estate *Onverwacht*). Claudina’s farm, named *Vlooibaai* (Fleabay — fleas multiplied in the sandy soils to plague residents and those on holiday) was also known as Mostertsbaai Strand, and later belonged to second generation Willem Morkel. Eventually it became The Strand. Philip’s letter was the outcome of a long standing dispute. Already in 1715, Philip Morkel and neighbours Hans Conterman and Jacob Malan complained to the *Landdrost* that loan farms (including David du Buisson’s) provided cheaply by the Company, were unfairly competing and were too close to their properties for which they paid high prices. They dared not leave their cattle out for grazing at night. Their complaints were rejected 31.

Philip’s brother *a2* Willem, also came to the Cape. He was a chief surgeon on various VOC vessels, including the *Meyden* (1711), *Arion* (1712), *Groenswaard* (1718) and *Westerdyxhoorn* (1721). He is described as *aleenlopend* (single), leaving no descendants and his domicilium was with Philip at Onverwacht. In 1722 Willem, is first mentioned in the roll of infantrymen under Captain Hermanus van Brakel, and also in 1723 in the same company with Francois du Toit as captain.
The Pasmans: Sisters and Mother

CATHARINA (TRIJNTJE) Pasman was 43 when Philip died. Dutch law allowed unmarried women and widows to own property in their own right (in this they were ahead of most countries in Europe, including England — however, when they married, the property went to the husband.) She farmed Onverwacht successfully, assisted by son Willem. Over the years she expanded the farm and also obtained title to loan pastoral farms across the mountain (Overberg) along the Rivier Zondereind. Catharina died aged 72 on 29 March 1764.

Catharina's beautiful kis or chest has survived at Die Bos. Such chests were for clothing and household linen brought along from Europe, and have become cherished heirlooms where they are still in families.

Catharina Pasman's Kis at Die Bos.
The copper and brass beakers and ornaments are antiques from a later period.

Photo: Author
SOPHIA (FYTJE) Pasman born 1670, Catharina's Mother, was the oldest child of Willem Schalksz van der Merwe, the Stamvader of the populous van der Merwe clan. She married Roelof Pasman (ca 1660 – 1695), originally from Mörs in Germany. Roelof had the farm Rustenberg on the outskirts of Stellenbosch in 1682. He and Sophia had four daughters, Margaretha (Grietjen), Catharina (Trijntje), Sibella and Roelofjen. Pasman was a diligent farmer and by 1692 had a flock of 400 sheep, 20 oxen. With the assistance of only two slaves, he had planted the wilderness with 5,000 vines. In 1695 he died, at a young age of 35.

As a marriageable widow owning a good farm in a colony short of women, Sophia would have been quite a catch. Soon after Roelof's death, on 1st January 1696 she married Pieter Robberts, who was a sergeant employed by the VOC. He came from Neustadt in the German county of Holstein, and arrived at the Cape in 1693. The little we know about Pieter Robberts is not all that favourable. It seems that he was a toady of the corrupt and unpopular Governor Willem Adriaan van der Stel. He became Heemraad in 1701 and acting Landdrost from 1703 to 1705. According to the diary of adversary Adam Tas, Robberts diligently practised the informer's craft, for which he would eventually be rewarded. He would regularly make the journey in his horse chaise from Stellenbosch to Vergelegen in the Hottentots Holland to tell on the locals, sometimes in the company of his successor as Landdrost, Starrenburg. Sadly Robberts suffered a stroke which left him semi-paralysed and with an obstruction in his speech. Tas on 21 July 1705 wrote in his diary that the guy appeared weird, like a slobbering donkey at the water trough, and that he was swerving like a swallow with one wing. He (Robberts) also said people avoided him.

As his wife, Sophia would also have experienced hostility in the community, and she lashed out. Two days after the slobbering donkey entry, Tas records that the rude wife of the old northern Landdrost Robberts cursed his sister brutally, hurled many swear words at her and threatened to hit her. This is likely the origin of Viney's remark that Fytje was 'tough as old boots'.

Donderdag den 23n Julij 1705 ...het onbescofte wijf van den oud noordsen landdrost Robberts (mijn) suster zeer brutaal hadde bejegend en veel scheldwoorden na 't hoof geworpen, haar drijgende te zullen slaan.

The rebellious burghers led by Tas were imprisoned at the Castle but they managed to smuggle a petition to the directors (Here Sewentien) in Holland. Van der Stel was deposed and recalled to Holland. He departed the Cape on the Oosterstein in April 1708, a voyage on which Philip was serving as constapel.
After Robberts’ death Sophia continued to farm at *Rustenberg*. She did well and increased the productivity of the farm. By 1720 she owned 600 sheep, 30 horses, 12,000 vines and 24 slaves. She inherited the Hottentots Holland farm *Onverwacht* from her daughter Margaretha, and she allowed Catharina and her husband Philip Morkel to farm there.

In 1718 *Onverwacht* was transferred to Philip Morkel. Sophia had also bought another farm *Nooitgedacht*, close to Stellenbosch, which she deeded to her other daughter, Sibella. Sophia left her farm *Rustenberg* to her grandson, Pieter Loubser (Sibella’s son). Sophia and her daughter Catharina were buried in grave #1 within the Stellenbosch church yard. Her son-in-law, Philip Morkel was buried in grave #95.

According to an article in the South African Medical Journal, Sophia was a carrier of the genetic disease Huntington’s chorea. About 200 sufferers could be traced back to descendants of her two marriages. I am not aware of any examples in the Morkel family.

**SIBELLA PASMAN** was born 19 August 1693 and married Johannes Albertus Loubser in 1714. Her mother Sophia gave her the farm *Nooitgedacht* in 1713, which was transferred to Loubser in 1718. In 1722 Sibella married again, to Jacobus Cloete (ca 1696 – 1757) who was the grandson of *Stamvader* Jacob Cloete, while Sibella was his great granddaughter. Their younger son Hendrik Cloete, born in 1725 married Hester Anna Lourens, daughter of Pieter Lourens, landdrost of Stellenbosch. They had eleven children. The family lived at *Nooitgedacht*, from which base Hendrik became one of the Cape’s largest land owners. In the Stellenbosch district he owned, apart from *Nooitgedacht, Dekker’s Vallei, Vryberg, Hardenberg, Weltevreden, Vogelenzang* and *De Berg Sinai*. He also owned the farm *Zandvliet* near the present Faure and a pastoral property in the *Overberg*.

To these extensive possessions he added *Groot Constantia* in 1778. He also bought all the movable property, which had originally belonged to Van der Spuij, including furniture, paintings, wine making and agricultural equipment, oxen, horses, cattle, wagons and 16 slaves for 30,000 guilders in cash. He spent a further 2,000 guilders on new furniture. *Groot Constantia*, originally the farm of Governor Simon van der Stel became the iconic Cape Dutch farm in South Africa, and popular with tourists.
Sisters Inheriting Farms — With a Twist

An enduring story within the family was that once two sisters stood to inherit a farm each. When the time came, they were surprised that the allocations were the reverse of what they had anticipated. The one sister named her farm Onverwacht or 'Unexpected' and the other farm became Nooitgedacht i.e. 'Never Imagined'. The husband on Nooitgedacht, a Morkel, was keen on fishing and the two families agreed to swap farms because Onverwacht bordered the sea at False Bay. And everyone was happy.

A lovely story not supported by facts. There were indeed two sisters, Catharina and Sibella Pasman. Catharina was married to Philip Morkel and she inherited Onverwacht. Sibella was married to Jan Loubser and inherited Nooitgedacht, outside Stellenbosch. However, the names predate ownership by the Pasmans' and the story would have been concocted afterwards around the names of the farms. There was also no swapping of farms, whether for fishing or other reasons.

Pecking Order in the Graveyard

Grave #1 at the church of Stellenbosch was bought by Philip’s mother-in-law, Sophia Pasman, wife of the Acting-landdrost Pieter Robberts in November 1734. Sophia and her daughters, Catharina (Philip’s wife) and Sibella were buried in this grave. Philip and his son Willem are lower down the scale in grave #95, also bought in 1734. Perhaps social rank played a role, for they were very status conscious in those days. We simply do not know.
4 Church Windows and Crest

Almost miraculously, two decorated window panes from the second church of Stellenbosch, completed in 1723, survive. They feature Philip Morkel and his sister-in-law Sibella Pasman. When a new church was built in 1862, seventeen windows, decorated with family crests of prominent families in the community, were thrown out as builders rubble. The two panes were rescued by a Morkel descendant who happened to pass by. Sibella’s window pane served as inspiration for the Morkel family crest.

THE FIRST church of Stellenbosch was burned down in the big fire of 18 December 1710 when, at the height of the dry summer and driven by gale force south–easterly winds, a fire swept through the town of thatched roof buildings. There were many delays in rebuilding the church and it was only completed in 1723.

The church had seventeen specially painted oval window panes about 23 cms tall. They were decorated with family crests of prominent members of the congregation, and were fixed as centre pieces in key lead light windows of the church. The panes were painted and fired by Abraham ten Osselaar in Amsterdam and took about three years from placing the order to delivery. Costs were around 11 guilders each. When the church was rebuilt for the third time in 1862, the windows were thrown out as builder’s rubble. Daniel Johannes O’Flinn Morkel (1836 – 1903) happened to walk by and saved two of them. They are now in the Stellenbosch Museum.

Philip’s window pane has a simple inscription, surrounded by baroque angels: Philip Morkel, Heemraat Anno 1723. The other window-pane has an elaborately embellished family crest with the inscription Sibella Pasman, Weduwe van (widow of) Jan Lobsten, A 1723. Sibella Pasman was Philip’s sister-in-law, married to Jan Loubser.
Philip clearly did not have a family crest at the time the window panes were commissioned, and had to endure his sister-in-law’s crest, and those of the other families, every Sunday during those long sermons. It was time to have one prepared. How exactly he went about it we do not know, but the resulting Morkel family crest hangs proudly against the wall at Die Bos, next to the Liefdekrans.
THE CREST has the classical knight’s helmet and shield, with the Morkel name in a ribbon below. The four quadrants of the shield denote family connections. The top left and bottom right quadrants, associated with the male patriarch, has an arrow pointing to a star in each. The top right and bottom left quadrants, associated with the wife are more complex. They contain a falconer on the left (Cloete), and a star and measuring parallelogram plane (Pasman) on the right — clearly inspired by Sibella’s Crest.

I found a compendium, printed in the 18th or 19th century, of Dutch middle-class (burgerlike) family crests, in a library years ago. I have forgotten the source but it was likely by Johannes Rietstap, either his Armorial Général or Handboek der Wapenkunde (Manual of Heraldry). The closest name to ours was ‘Merkel’ and there it was — an arrow pointing to a star, just like in our family crest. It would have been the best the designer could get for Morkel. Philip would have commissioned the crest shortly after 1723. It is unlikely that his son Willem would have done so, because then the female quadrants would have had the Malan crest.
Cor Pama’s \textit{Die Groot Afrikaanse Familieboek} gives a verbal description of the crest at \textit{Die Bos}. Pama also displays an image of another Morkel crest, truncated, and showing only the arrow pointing to the star part, without the Pasman parts. Unfortunately he does not provide a reference of its origin.

Robert Laing \textsuperscript{46} researched South African Heraldic writers of the 20\textsuperscript{th} century and found most were enthusiastic amateurs, who collected and adapted crests and seals from various sources and, as he generously comments, ‘with varying levels of scholarly rigour’.

In the British tradition, a crest is governed by heraldic rules. It is limited to aristocracy, and specific to an individual, not a family. The Dutch had a broader approach. Not only nobles, but also the middle-class had crests, and they were associated with families, not individuals. These traditions stretched back hundreds of years and the British heraldry rules did not apply. When the Dutch settled at the Cape in 1652, crests were common. Those without a crest when they arrived, had one designed as they moved up the social ladder. In Pama’s book there are more than 400 crests from South African families. Whatever, the Morkels were middle class with no royal or aristocratic ancestors or pretensions.

There is a niche industry that caters for the desire of families to have and display crests. For a fee they will search whether a crest exists for the family and then produce a nicely coloured portrait to hang on the wall. I suspect a crest is always found, even if concocted, and it is a ‘nice little business’. Because of public interest, a Bureau of Heraldry was established in South Africa where crests can be registered under authority of the Act.

For some, a family crest smacks of vanity, even if harmless. Some argue about legality and whether they should legitimately be used. For others it is part of history and a feeling of kinship and pride in being part of the family. While one need not flaunt it, there is pleasure in a family crest that we can trace almost 300 years to the 1720’s and to \textit{Stamvader} Philip Morkel himself.
5 The Wreck of the Schonenberg

On the wall at Die Bos hangs the Liefdekrans (garland of love). It is an epic poem written and printed in 1725 as a tribute to the kindness Stamvader Philip and his brother Willem showed to more than 80 shipwrecked sailors. They had walked from the wreck for six days through the wilds of Africa. The first habitation they reached was Philip’s farm Onverwacht, where he provided generous hospitality. Apart from Die Bos, another print is in the Cape Archives, and a third one with i4 Pete Morkel.

THE SCHONENBERG, a ship of 800 tons, was built in 1717 for the Amsterdam Chamber of the VOC, and commanded by Albert van Soest. It was wrecked at Struisbaai near Cape Agulhas on 20 November 1722 while on a homeward-bound voyage from Batavia, in the company of the Anna Maria. The ship ran ashore at night in fine weather due to the negligence of her officers. No lives were lost.

The story is told in P.W. Morkel’s book. More recently, Dr. Jan Malan researched this event, and found extensive records in the Cape Archives and prepared two well-researched papers (reprinted with permission on our website) about the shipwreck and its aftermath. These are the sources used here.

The Schonenberg left Batavia on 26 September 1722 in company of sister ship Anna Maria. It carried a cargo of sugar, coffee, tea, pepper and Dutch East (Indonesian) timber. It carried a crew of 110 and 28 guns. There were also some valuables for individuals back in Holland on board. By the 5th of November the two ships had separated and the Schonenberg was on its own. On the afternoon of 19 November it was roughly 70 km south of Stilbaai and the skipper ordered a course due west. The weather was good, with a light haze and a moderate north-easterly breeze.

At half past three in the morning the look-out called out that he saw land to the left but Under-Helmsman Corver whose watch it was, did not respond. A quarter of an
hour later the look-out called out that land was approaching fast. The cries woke the skipper, who tried his best to adjust sails and helm, but it was too late. Two anchors were cast out, but the ropes broke under the strain and the ship, with its bow to the land, drifted onto rocks, about a kilometre from the land. They launched two rowing boats. One of them promptly sank, but by using the remaining boat and hastily constructed rafts, they all made it to shore safely. The skipper and officers stayed on board for the next day and night and landed only on November 21st. Meanwhile a strong northerly stirred up the sea and the ship developed a serious crack in the middle.

The skipper had come ashore on the evening of the 21st by boat and ordered the men to unload it. There was chaos on the beach and general disobedience. The crew was drunk most of the time. Van Soest spent the night alone in his tent and in his evidence said five or six of the men had ill-used and robbed him. Some of the crew returned to the wreck to loot. The skipper and the book-keeper Augier, with 20 crew remained at the site until 26 December. Water was short and three officers with some 80 of the crew set out for the Cape on foot, with a letter for the Governor from the skipper. He asked for a *galjoot* to be sent round to take off the cargo, because smaller
boats would not be safe on that coast. The party reached Philip Morkel’s farm Onverwacht five to six days later.

The walk ‘through the wilds of Africa’ from the wreck to Onverwacht was harrowing, as described in the epic poem, Liefdekrans. They were reduced to eating grass and finally shot a hippopotamus for meat. Malan suggests that this could have been in the mouth of the Klein Rivier. After that episode they took a further three days to reach Onverwacht. The officers (upper-helmsman Verbeek, under-helmsman Corver and third watch Prest) told in what sorry state they arrived at heemraad Philip Morkel’s farm. They also testified that it was impossible to approach the wreck on account of the heavy seas, and that they were lucky to be saved as their boat had also been thrown on the beach by the waves. The whole stern of the wreck had broken away. There was only half a leaguer of water on shore, which caused them to set out for the Cape. Malan is amazed that they could travel the distance in the wilderness in only five to six days. It is also a mystery how they missed the veepos (grazing post) Uilenkraal of Hendrik Klopper, located along the way.

News of the wreck, which took place on the 20th November, had already reached the Cape. The ship Anna Maria reported on the 26th November that her sistership Schonenberg had gone ashore near Agulhas, but that the seas were too rough for her to approach that vessel. Marthinus Bergh, the Landdrost of Stellenbosch, was ordered to despatch someone to investigate the circumstances.

Jan de la Fontaine, Adriaan van Kervel, and the equipagie-meester (naval superintendent) Cornelis Valk of the Cape were sent off to the wreck. On the way they stopped at the house of Philip Morkel where they met the three officers and

![Rocky Coast at Struisbaai, where the Schonenberg was wrecked.](image)

*Malan, Photo by Jimmy Herbert, Somerset West, 2012*
The likely route (red dashes) followed by the shipwrecked crew.
The distance to the wreck is just under 200km. The route was reconstructed from accounts by three expeditions to the wreck by the authorities. The shipwrecked crew probably followed the same path, except that they missed the grazing post *Uilenkraal* of Hendrik Klopper. The hippo was probably shot in the Kleinrivier.

Malan p61. Author’s chart inspired by Jimmy Herbert, Somerset West, May 2012.

crew. Three of the crew had been left behind in the *veld* and one arrived in a wagon.

The crew were told to move on to the Cape. Some were too weak to walk further and they accepted Philip Morkel’s offer of an ox wagon and horsecart. Meanwhile Jacob Malan, owner of *Morgenster*, was sent on to the scene of the wreck in a wagon with two *muids* of meal, some brandy and two oxen. It is unlikely that Malan himself, an older man, went with his wagon to the wreck. The Governor sent three further expeditions to the site.

It is unclear how much, if any, goods were salvaged. If the conditions at the wreck were as described, it is unlikely that much could be saved. However, according to some, wagons laden with goods saved from the wreck went to the house of Jacobus van der Heiden of *Vergelegen*. Leibbrandt 50 notes that ’Ex-skipper Albert van Soest had saved nearly all the goods and the valuables from the wrecked ship *Schonenberg*,

---

26
and placed them at Vergelegen. Van der Heiden, even paid for the wagon loads, but denied any knowledge of the goods or of their removal from his house. ‘...the whole family's strong pretended ignorance of the matter’ was condemned in a letter to the Council of Seventeen in Holland. There are unsubstantiated claims that a copper pot and a ships bell with the ships name on it were later found at Vergelegen. If they ever existed, they have since been lost.

The wrecked sailors of the Schonenberg returned to Holland, but the upper- and under-helmsmen and the skipper had to appear before the Court of Justice to answer for their actions. The helmsmen were eventually acquitted, but the skipper was found guilty of carelessness in handling the vessel and discharged from the service met stilstand van gagie (with termination of pay).

As can be expected, the parties blamed each other for the unfortunate events. The papers of Malan describe the proceedings of the inquiries in detail. From this it is clear that, regardless who was at fault, the crew and officers had no respect for skipper van Soest. Evidence given claimed that he came on shore from the wreck drunk and made demands, which the crew refused to comply with. The officers sided with the crew. With such dysfunctional leadership, it is plausible that helmsmen and the skipper were all guilty of gross negligence. Diaries of Soest and the ship's Bookkeeper, Paulus Augier are recorded in the minutes of the Governor and his Council on 9 February 1723. The minutes also record expeditions back to the ship in January. It took the party seven days to reach the site of the wreck. On the way, on the 5th day, they requisitioned a wagon from Hendrik Klopper. (He was later reimbursed for this).

On reaching the wreck, after some effort due to rough seas, they managed to burn it. They also seem to have had problems with some troublesome people, a few Europeans which they had not seen before, as well as some black youths. One of them was in possession of a firearm (snaphaan) of the Company and was aggressive when they sought to retrieve it. A bit later Klopper stormed into their tent and threatened them (met een seer brutale redene and dreigemente) and wanted to unload goods from his wagon. They arrested Kopper and kept him until he sobered up — he was better behaved the next day. Jacobus van der Heiden met them on the way back and accompanied them back to Vergelegen. In May 1723, the Company agreed to reimburse van der Heiden with 697 rixdollars for food supplied to the shipwrecked crew. He 'generously' did not claim for 42 trek oxen of which 5 sustained wounds and 3 had strains, apart from 3 wagons and 3 slaves used in service of the Company in the journey over the mountains.
Philip Morkel received only 84 rixdollars for housing and caring for the crew. Van der Heiden was clearly better at playing claims games with the Company than Philip, who also was not part of the alleged conspiracy. He provided for the shipwrecked crew and comes out of this honourably (as also Jacques Malan). There is a table at Die Bos that, according to the family, is from the Schonenberg. If such a bulky item could have been salvaged in the chaotic conditions at the wreck, perhaps there were other goods as well.

One of the sailors, Abraham van Mommen, showed his gratitude to Philip and Willem Morkel by writing an epic poem on his return to Holland. He had at least two copies printed for Philip and Willem. The poem also refers to an earlier shipwreck experienced by Philip’s brother Willem, in the ship Arion, off the coast of Maxima (probably Indo–China). It seems that three copies were printed and sent to the Cape. One for VOC records which is in the Cape Archives. One for a1 Philip which hangs at Die Bos. The third copy for brother a2 Willem is currently owned by i4 Pete Morkel and it likely came to him by the following path: First, both copies would have gone to the only second generation son, b3 Willem. After his death it is likely that a print remained at Die Bos and the other went to the oldest third generation son, c4 Philip Hendrik Morkel of Morgenster. After Philip Hendrik’s death in 1831, Morgenster and it contents (including presumably, the Liefdekrans) were purchased by d9 Willem Morkel, married to Isabella Zeederberg. It then went to oldest sons, e1 Daniel Johannes and f1 Willem (Dooley) Morkel. Thereafter it went to 3rd child g3 Frank James Sievewright, then his only son, h1 William Francis van der Byl Morkel and eventually to fourth child i4 Pete Morkel, who is the current owner.

There are also lurid stories by Rosenthal 52 and Green 53 about the wreck, where the skipper and locals conspired to wreck the ship and steal its treasures. In burying the treasure in the vineyard at Vergelegen, and before it could be recovered, some slaves and one of the conspirators (Klopper) were mysteriously killed. The skipper was tortured by being broken on the wheel and strangled, while others were banished in chains. Exciting reading, but fiction. The real events are fascinating enough and do not need fantasy.

One of the conspirators was said to be Jacob Malan of Morgenster. This motivated his descendant, dr. Malan to undertake his research. He states, a more unlikely robber and conspirator than the French Huguenot Jacques (Jacob) Malan could hardly be found — a respected and prosperous farmer, family man in his mid-fifties, and a deacon (elected elder in following year, 1724) in the church. Malan lists many errors and flights of fancy in these stories, and they should be discarded completely.
LIEFDEKRANS
Opgedragen aan de Deugdelijke HEERE

PHILIP HENDRIK MORKEL,
EN
WILLEM MORKEL.

De eerste voor Uw moed volploeteren liefde, beroepen aan het Ongelukkig Volk van Schansberg,
En Uw Broeders Reuvelige Reys, met het Schip Aria.

MORKEL

P.W. Morkel
Addressed to the Noble Mr. Philip Hendrik Morkel, and to Willem Morkel.

To the former for your Charity, beyond all praise, shown towards the Shipwrecked Mariners of Schonenberg; and to your Brother, to commemorate his ill-fated voyage on the ship Arion.

Should any human being seek fame and glory,
Benevolence must dwell in his heart,
And noble Virtue be ornamented with Charity and Faith.
And he who would make Mercy his deepest joy,
Mist love the highest good and ever aspire to it?
He should in all ways be governed by Humility.
It is indeed true to say that we must regard
Charity in human beings as residing in the spirit*

This Flip Morkel recently proved his love
In his treatment of the shipwrecked people, steeped in misery,
Of the East Indian ship Schonenberg.
They by ill-fortune came to be cast ashore,
Alas, to their sorrow, on the coast of Anguilhas.
Being very unfortunately shipwrecked there,
Whence eighty-five men, trusting in God's pity
Wandered through the wilds of Africa, as formerly God's Chosen (i)
Passed through the desert from the land of Egypt;
And God protected his people and watched over his children,
That famine should not overwhelm that band,
Leading them to the land he desired to give them,
And on the way letting manna fall on them
In the mornings, when dawn spreads its glorious rays.
Even so did these travellers together enter the desert,
Suffering greatly from hunger, in sorrow and with weeping,
Their food, to keep life in their bodies, being the grass;
And there Death contended for them, while Life grieved,
For there was no Hope. But God at last revealed his power,
And one man among them his powers.
Thus a hippopotamus was killed,
And gave food for their bodies. Thereafter, in three days,
They found succour in Hottentots Holland,
At the hands of Morkel, This man gave lavishly
To all that sorry company. O Noble Deed!
That you, O kindly spirit should sustain these pitiful mortals
With food and drink! O God, You manifested Your mercy through him I
Now let it be my privilege, in deep respect,
To sound abroad your name. Let fame honour it
In the starry Courts above, and trumpet it through all eternity!
When Phoenix can so well make known your virtue
How shall my humble muse bring added lustre to your name?
But your richest reward lies with your Creator;
And my desire is rather to call forth joy,
Than to add to your praise.
May Heaven grant you the day-spring of its joy,
And protect you and your household from all evil.
I pray you may never undergo disaster or failure,
But throughout your life enjoy happiness,
And departing, dwell forever in God's Heaven.

But how could I have progressed far in these good words
Without referring to your brother,
Who also experiencing shipwreck,
Remained on the Arion, in danger at sea,
Off the coast of Maxima;
Thus causing great anxiety and sorrow;
For the cries of Man could be heard from that ship,
When suddenly it was swept with spread sails onto a rock,
Where the bow sat fast,
Even as happened with the Greek ships,
In former days bearing the wealth of Troy to Greece;
And the stern, damaged and driven before the wind,
Swung back and forth without cessation.
The wind lashed the waves sky-high
And the people, overcome with terror, endured it all
In misery. Owing to a raging sea,
They saw no land, no ship, no safe anchorage.
And amid their death-shrieks, the vessel parted!
Breaking amidsthips, O, terrible misfortune!
Then each strove as served him best
And trusted in God's mercy that he would reach
His own country. After heavy to pests
Through angry seas, and amidst loud peals of thunder,
At length they reached the shore; then struggled on
Suffering hunger and thirst from which there was no respite;
Then coming to Cochin-China, they were derided by Mandarins,
And weighed down by the fear of Death and a thousand torments.
At length liberated, they once again
returned to their native land,
Where by the power of God,
They found help in their need. You, therefore,
know what mortals can endure at sea.
It is, then, my privilege to express appreciation of your kindness
In feeding these poor shipwrecked sailors.
May your name be praised now and for evermore!
May God feed you hereafter in his Halls of Bliss,
And may you dwell with his saints through all eternity.
Farewell, in deep joy I now remain your servant,

(i) Exodus 23, 18: But God led His people round, by way of the
desert.

Ab. van Mommen.

At Amsterdam, Printed by Hendrik van Mommen, Tuynstraat. 1725
Moppie: Ryk Mister Morkel

Ryk mister Morkel
Ons kommandant
Hy regeer sy vollek met goed en verstand
Laat wy drinken de Kaapse koele wyn
Laat wy drinken de Kaapse koele wyn
Jan Burgers kom te staan met sy wapen in sy hand
Stryk met syn land (hand?) en syn verstand.

My attempt to translate a ditty where sense is not the first priority:

Rich mister Morkel
Our commandant
He rules his folk with goods and mind
Let us drink the cool Cape Wine
Let us drink the cool Cape Wine
Jan Burgers comes standing, weapon in his hand
Strokes with his land (hand?) and his mind.

Composed in the 18\textsuperscript{th} century, this Moppie was written by freed slaves about their former master Mr. Morkel (possibly 2\textsuperscript{nd} generation Willem), for their liberation. The song was rediscovered in 1960 and collected by Willem van Warmelo, after reading an interview with Mrs. Brinkhuys who was interviewed in a Cape Town newspaper about her memories of slave times and her former master Mr. Morkel from Somerset (West).

The second of January (tweede nuwejaar) has long been the traditional day of celebration of the mixed race coloured community of Cape Town and the Western Cape. The Kaapse Klopse — bands playing and singing moppies and minstrel troops parading and dancing in the streets and attract large crowds.
6 Willem Morkel and Helena Catharina Malan

As the only son, second generation Willem Morkel inherited well and lived at a time when the Cape prospered. His second marriage was to Helena Catharina Malan from the neighbouring farm Morgenster. They had four sons who were active leaders in the community. They formed the basic family branches of the extended Morkel family.

Willem Morkel was born in 1718 and died at 69 in 1788 at Onverwacht. He married Sara van Brakel at the age of 30 on 11 May 1749. Their first two children, both daughters named Catharina Adriana, died as babies. Finally their third, Catharina, born in 1754 survived. She married Jacobus Malan of Morgenster, her stepmother’s brother in 1772. There is a gable at the farm with the initials M and M, for Malan and Morkel, intertwined, built in her time. Jacobus died in 1778. Catharina then married Rudolph Johannes Laubscher and they continued to farm at Morgenster. The beautiful baroque gabled home would have been constructed during that time.

Sara van Brakel died aged 42 on 28 March 1759. Willem was 41 and married again in the same year, to Helena Catharina Malan, of Morgenster. Willem and Helena Catharina had four sons and a daughter plus two daughters that died as babies. Their youngest daughter, Helena Catharina, born 1773 married Philippus Albertus Myburgh, son of P.A. Myburgh of Meerlust on 6 May 1808.
Willem’s sons were leaders in the community and their activities are described in the following chapters.

c4 Philip Hendrik Morkel was the oldest son, born in 1760 and died aged 70 in 1831. He first farmed at Rome, which was split off from Onverwacht. Later he is mentioned as living at Paarde Vlei, the farm of his mother-in-law, who at that time was the widow of Martin Melck. Thereafter he acquired Morgenster. He was a leader, involved with his brothers in founding the town and church of Somerset West. He was married to Johanna Petronella Malan, who was born at Elsenburg near Stellenbosch, and was a niece of his mother. They had three sons, Willem, Hercules Adriaan and Philip Hendrik Gabriel, and one daughter that died very young. Only Hercules Adriaan, married to Isabella Anna Magaretha Mostert had children — three daughters. Thus after one generation, there are no Morkel descendants from Philip Hendrik.

c5 Willem Morkel, the second son was born on 31 September 1761 and died aged 60 in 1821. He farmed at Voorburg, which was split off from Onverwacht. He was married to Anna Margaretha Wium on 15 June 1783. They had nine children, seven girls and two boys. The extensive Voorburg branch of the family stem from one of the sons, also called Willem. The other boy Pieter Gerhard died in 1807, aged 17.

c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel was born in 1764 and died aged 60 in 1825. As the third son he stayed on Onverwacht to assist his father, while his two older brothers established farms of their own. When his father died, he inherited the family farm. Daniel Johannes was married three times, first to Hester Sibella Keeve with whom he had three children who all died in infancy, then to Maria Dorothea Louw, with six children and finally to Sophia Alida Brink, no children. The extensive Onverwacht/Morgenster/Broadlands/Stellenbosch branches of the family stem from their three sons, Hendrik Johannes, Daniel Johannes and Willem.

c7 Hercules Morkel was born in 1767 and died aged 41 in 1808. He farmed at Welgelegen (currently Erinvale Golf Estate), and married Helena Munnik on 18 April 1790. They had eight children of whom four were boys who formed the Hercules branch of the family. Two, Willem and Gerhard settled in the Overberg (over the mountain) in the Caledon and Greyton districts. Apart from the chapters on Anthonie Charles Morkel, and the Beaufort West Morkel branch, we know very little of this branch of the family and it is a major gap in our book.
Willem's Estate

b4 WILLEM MORKEL was a man of means as indicated by the inventory of his estate drawn up after his death in 1788. As the only son, he inherited well. His mother Catharina Pasman (1691 – 1764) lived for 28 years after Philip Morkel's death and was successful in her own right, leaving Onverwacht as well as farms along the Rivier Zondereind over the mountains to her son. (The 'River without end' ran parallel to the mountains instead of directly to the ocean, and eventually joined up with the Breede River). He was also the sole beneficiary of the estate of his namesake Uncle Willem, Philip's brother. Willem farmed well and built on this foundation.

The mid to late 1700s was a time of prosperity at the Cape. People were living high and many of the Cape Dutch homesteads with their beautiful gables were built during this period. Governor Ryk Tulbagh imposed sumptuary laws (Prag en Praalwette) to prescribe how far people could flaunt their wealth.

The probate process involved taking inventory of assets for taxation assessment while noting provisions made in the will. Inventories were done by prominent persons in the community, such as heemraaden. They were often family friends and, it is likely that valuations, particularly of property, were kept modest for tax reasons.

The estate was valued by the Honourable Philippus Albertus Meijburg, heemraad, and presented on 4 June 1788 to Anthonij Alexander Faure, Secretary for Stellenbosch and Drakenstein. P. A. Meiburgh (later the name changed to Myburgh) of Meerlust was Willem's brother-in-law. The full inventory in the original Dutch is on our website.

The main beneficiaries were the second and third sons. c5 Willem inherited the farms Voorburg and Mosterts Baaij (on which the town The Strand was later built). c6 Daniel Johannes inherited the main farm Onverwacht with an annexe Zeemans Rust (Sailors Rest – likely the later Altena). The oldest son, c4 Philip Hendrik received Ezelsjagt and fourth son c7 Hercules, Brakfontein. They were remote, across the mountains along the Rivier Zondereind and of lesser value. They were used mainly for grazing for the arduous trek over the Gantouw pass would have made marketing of crops uneconomic. In later years the area became a major wheat growing region. In 1795 c4 Philip Hendrik owned the farm Rome, and I suspect this had been excised from Onverwacht before Willem’s death. Thus, c4 Philip Hendrik was well catered for. c7 Hercules seems to have lost out. Years later he would own the farm Welgelegen but he was not treated as liberally as his older three brothers.
It is interesting that the estate did not go to Willem’s widow, Helena Catharina Malan, possibly to avoid death duties. (Women regularly owned land in those days — Willem’s mother, Catharina Pasman owned Onverwacht and Ezelsjagt in her own right after Philip Morkel’s death). Willem’s widow, Helena Catharina Malan was 52 when he died and lived another 35 years to 89.

Willem’s two daughters are not mentioned in the inventory. The oldest daughter Catharina, 34 (with Willem’s first wife, Sara van Brakel), was already married to her second husband, and she had inherited the substantial farm Morgenster from her first husband Jacobus Malan. The second daughter Helena Catharina was 15 when Willem died. She later married Phillipus Albertus Myburgh, the son of the owner of Meerlust of the same name (and who did the inventory).

Slaves formed a substantial component of the estate. Regardless of our current views about slave ownership, it was reality of life at the time. You could not run a large farm without them. On the 7 farms the slave tally was 65 males, 11 females, 18 boys and 19 girls, or 113 in total. Of these 91 were valued at 400 gulden each. The slaves at Onverwacht and Voorburg were almost all born at the Cape (van de Kaap), while some of those on the Rivier Zondereind farms were from Mocambique, Madagascar, Malabar, Bengal, Surat, and Boegies (Celebes).

A detailed list of furniture gives a fascinating insight into the households of the time. Some items are still at Die Bos to this day. The grandfather clock was listed at 50 rxr (rixdollars), the most expensive piece of furniture in the inventory. Catharina Pasman’s chest with brass fittings (Een Groote kist met Coper beslag) was valued at only 4rxrs and four paintings valued at a total of 8rxr, might have included the Liefdekrans and the family crest.

The farm had various workshops, including a smithy and a long list of farm implements as one would expect. There were 2 horse carriages (kap kar), 6 ox-wagons (several in disrepair), a horse-wagon and an ‘old cart’ (oude kar). The cellar contained vats, barrels, leaguers, wine presses, a brandy still, wine and must (wine in process), vinegar — characteristic of a large wine farm.

Livestock included 57 geldings (reunpaarde), 176 horses, 170 oxen, 169 cattle, 2,282 sheep and 26 pigs. The geldings were valued at between 20 and 25rxr each, while the other horses (aanteelpaarden) were 7 rxr. The higher valued horses had been broken in and used for farm work such as ploughing, drawing wagons and carriages and for riding. Much of the livestock, particularly sheep and cattle were kept on the Rivier Zondereind farms.
Firearms are absent from the inventory, except for a brief reference to a pistol belt held out by Hercules. This is unusual. All farmers would have had guns for hunting and protection (even in the 1940’s as a child I slept in my father’s office with three guns on the gun rack). Most likely the guns had already been distributed among the four sons and did not form part of Willem’s estate. Willem would have been 70 at the time. All four sons were dragoons in the Stellenbosch regiment.

Caring Mrs Morkel

From letter by Hendrik Cloete to Hendrik Swellengrebel 60:

‘A Hottentot, named Piet, is a Goeijman (sic) who works on the farm of Willem Morkel. He was one of a pair of twins, and according to Hottentot custom had to die. They placed him on a branch overhanging a river to fall off and drown, but before he fell Mrs. Morkel found him and reared him.’

‘I do not know what ceremonies are attached to this custom and whether it may be dying out, since the Gonjemans (sic) have been in contact with the Dutch for so many years.’

The caring Mrs Morkel was Helena Catharina Malan married to second generation Willem Morkel.

================================
A 1950s view of the Hottentots Holland Helderberg Basin.
The towns are: The Strand in the foreground and Somerset West nestled against Helderberg at the back. Urban sprawl has since consumed most of the farms shown, except Morgenster, Welgelegen and a core of Die Bos.

Morkel owned farms are indicated. Rome, Voorburg, Mostertsbaai were spun off from the original Onverwacht/Die Bos during the late 1700’s. Morgenster was originally owned by Malans and later Morkels. Welgelegen was Hercules Morkel’s farm and is now Erinvale Golf Estate. Zeemansrust formed part of Willem Morkel’s estate. I have assumed it is the portion close to The Strand, named The Lodge and later Altena. It was sold during the 1800s and bought back in the 1900’s. It became Altena, (where I was born). The remaining portion of Cloetenberg after Somerset West was established, became Oatlands and was owned at a later stage by P.J.G. Morkel. Broadlands lies off the photo to the right.

Postcard bought in 1961.
7 The Farms

Farming was by far the main economic activity at the Cape.

Starting with Stamvader Philip Morkel’s iconic farm, Onverwacht, the family went on to own a significant part of the Helderberg basin of Hottentots Holland. Over time the family also owned farms in other parts of the Cape and Southern Africa.

THE VOC ran a series of buiteposte (outposts) during their early days at the Cape. One of them was in the Hottentots Holland. It was established in August 1672, twenty years after Cape was settled. Initially it was to augment supplies of sheep and cattle to meet the ongoing demand for meat from the passing ships. It was gradually expanded to include crops. The Hottentots Holland buitepos was in a cul-de sac valley or basin surrounded by mountains and the sea of False Bay. The Colony could grow inland to the east and north-east past Stellenbosch, while Hottentots Holland lay out of the way to the south. Expansion did occur but for almost 200 years until Sir Lowry’s pass was built, the Gantouw path crossing the mountain range to the Overberg (lit. ‘over the mountain’) was difficult and arduous.

In 1700 the Governor Willem Adriaan van der Stel persuaded the visiting VOC Commissar Wouter Valckenier to grant him about 400 morgen of land consisting of the old buitepos in Hottentots Holland. It was an unauthorised concession made without the knowledge or consent of the Company’s directors, the Here Sewentien. W.A. van der Stel used company employees, slaves and materials to establish a very substantial farm he called Vergelegen. Over time he granted land to his friends, including Parel Vallei and Groot Paardevlei in the Hottentots Holland to his brother Frans van der Stel. Corruption was endemic
among the underpaid officials of the VOC and W.A. van der Stel took it to a new and higher level.

Van der Stel antagonised the local farmers by restricting sales to passing ships to himself and his cronies. Nepotism was rife. Brother Frans was particularly loathed for his arrogance. The Governor tried to contain the rebellious burghers and surrounded himself with cronies and informers. Pieter Robberts, the second husband of Sophia Pasman (eventually mother-in-law of Philip Morkel), was one of his informers. Matters came to a head when the burghers, under the leadership of Adam Tas prepared and smuggled a petition to the directors in Holland. Van der Stel incarcerated some of them in the dungeon at the Castle. The group questioned the authority of the local Council of Policy and claimed the right to be tried in Holland. Although this was the last thing he wanted, Governor van der Stel was overridden by the Broad Council, which was enlarged to include Captains and officers of ships at the Cape. On arrival in Holland the rebels presented their case to the VOC. Van der Stel was deposed and sent back to Holland. He, his secunde Elsevier and pastoor Kalden sailed on 23 April 1708 on the Oosterstein, the voyage where Philip Morkel served on board as constapel.

There is a different version, that the Governor acted justifiably against a group of farmers who raided and murdered Khoi tribes for cattle and sheep, and their petitions were revenge. Whatever, van der Stel lost and was deposed.
Vergelegen was broken up into four portions: Vergelegen, bought by Barend Gildenhausen, Laaste Gift (later Lourensford) by Jacobus van der Heiden, Morgenster by Jacques Malan and Cloetenberg by widow Gerrit Cloete.

The Master Gardener of the VOC at the Cape, Jan Hartog worked for van der Stel at Vergelegen. In return he was allocated adjoining land, which somewhat cynically he called Onverwacht (unexpected). When van der Stel was deposed, Onverwacht was sold to Aletta Elbertsz who passed it on to her son Nicolaas and his wife Margaretha Pasman. Nicolaas and Margaretha died in the small pox epidemic of 1713, and the farm then went to Sophia Pasman who allowed her daughter Catharina Pasman and her husband Philip Morkel to farm there. It was transferred to Philip in 1718.

Farming was successful and after Philip died in 1735, Catharina carried on acquiring several grazing properties across the mountains. Their son Willem continued building on his inheritance and when he died, he left seven farms for his four sons, as described in the previous chapter.

Remote from shops and services during the early times, these farms were largely self-sufficient in producing a variety of crops typical of Mediterranean climate and keeping animals for milk, butter, eggs and meat. But they remained basically wine farms.

In 1825 the Morkels had the following vines under cultivation:

\[
\begin{align*}
c6 & \quad \text{Daniel Johannes Sr. of Onverwacht} & 100,000 \text{ vines} \\
c8 & \quad \text{Daniel Johannes, (his son) of Rome} & 60,000 \text{ vines} \\
c4 & \quad \text{Philip Hendrik Sr. of Morgenster} & 150,000 \text{ vines} \\
c5 & \quad \text{Willem of Voorburg and Mostertsbaai Strand} & 80,000 \text{ vines.}
\end{align*}
\]

They were labour intensive and until emancipation during the 1830s, slaves were used. Numbers in 1815 for some of the larger farms in the district were:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Vergelegen: M.W. Theunissen & Sara C. Malan} & 60 \text{ slaves} \\
\text{Onverwacht: c6 D.J. Morkel & Sophia A. Brink} & 55 \text{ slaves} \\
\text{Voorburg: c5 Willem Morkel & Anna M. Wium,} & 32 \text{ slaves} \\
\text{Morgenster: c4 P.H. Morkel & Johanna P. Malan} & 30 \text{ slaves} \\
\text{Welgelegen: Widow c7 Hercules Morkel} & 28 \text{ slaves}
\end{align*}
\]
Farmyard at *Die Bos* with dovecote, ringmuur and threshing circle. The barn and *kraal* in the background. The oak tree front left, is hollowed out with age and could date back to Jan Hartog’s time.

*Photo: author*

Family Tomb at *Die Bos*, 1831. It has since been demolished.

*P.W. Morkel*

*Kraalgate at Die Bos*

*P.W. Morkel*
8 Onverwacht/Die Bos

Although it has now been reduced through urban sprawl to about five hectares around the house and large farmyard, *Onverwacht* has remained in the Morkel family for ten generations and 300 years. Under English influence the name changed to *The Bush*, and then translated back to Afrikaans as *Die Bos*. Having grown up on a portion of the farm it is also special to me.

AS A CHILD it was a Sunday ritual to visit my grandmother and oom John (who as the elder son was the owner) and tant Nettie (Antoinette née Malan) on the old family farm. After greeting the adults we were free to roam and play on the farm — it was interesting and different to ours. There were oak trees so old that the centres were hollowed out and one could hide inside them. Pine trees were huge with thick soft bark from which one could pry off pieces to carve small model boats to float in the irrigation furrows. We could collect pine nuts and break them open on stones to get at the edible nuts. There was a large grove of tall bamboo in which to play. We could pick guavas and loquats and a strange eastern fragrant fruit called jamboes^68^. A flock of geese wandered around the farmyard and chased us aggressively when we came close. There was a tomb with a half open steel door.

Sunday afternoons were open house where family members and friends would drop in for tea and cake. Even after my grandmother died in 1942, my parents regularly visited and we would meet various uncles, aunts and cousins.

The farm straddled the plain from the foothills of the Hottentots Holland Mountains to the sea. Travellers to the south east interior had to cross the farm. It was about a day's journey by horse carriage from the Cape and many travellers stayed at the farm before tackling the formidable *Gantouw* (Khoi word for eland path) pass over the Hottentots Holland Mountains on their way to Swellendam and Graaff Reinet.
Being in the way, the farm was repeatedly dissected by roads, railway, telegraph and telephone wires, and during the 1950’s, a divided motorway, electricity pylons and cables, and three large water pipelines carrying water for Cape Town from the Steenbras dam in the mountains. Parts were also expropriated for the water treatment plant for the Strand and a railway line to that town.

The farmyard was enormous compared to current practice. When established, it was a remote outpost. Space and buildings were needed for farming activities including wine making, threshing and storage of grains, animal husbandry including milking and slaughtering as well as being self-sufficient in trades such as building, carpentry, and smithy. The yard was enclosed by a ringmuur — a white plastered low wall, typical of the old Cape farms. It contained the large main house, a second house for either the unmarried adult son or the retired parents (often the widowed mother), a house for the foreman, wine-cellars, stables, barns, housing for labourers, an ornamental dovecote with a neoclassical gable, and a round threshing floor.

There were several very old oak trees in front of the house and scattered around the farmyard — possibly from the original owner Jan Hartog’s time. His boss, governor W.A. van der Stel, like his father before him, were big planters of oak trees in the colony. In time their cores rotted and they became hollowed out. Two ornamental pillars supported an old slave bell dated 1723, cast in Amsterdam and decorated with a vines motif.

The tomb was in a vineyard some distance away from the farmyard, surrounded by a grove of cypresses. It was dated 1831. Catharina Theunissen (married to Hendrik Johannes Morkel, died in that year) and 32 Morkels were buried there up to 1902. It was in a dilapidated state when I saw it as a child. The door was ajar and we could see the coffins stacked inside. The remains were later buried and the tomb demolished. A plaque marks the spot in the present day gated housing estate.

The main house was a large 18 room U shaped building (cousin h2 Hanna Morkel and his wife Susra closed off the U with modern bathrooms resulting in a square around a courtyard). It was modernised in 1897 — the thatch roof was replaced with corrugated galvanised steel and the front facade decorated with pebble inlays.

There is a simple triangular gable above the front door. According to family tradition the house was built by second generation Willem Morkel (1718 – 1788), but there would have been an earlier dwelling dating back to Philip and before him, Jan Hartog. The house never had ornamental gables characteristic of old Cape Dutch houses. Sir John Herschel sketched the house in 1835 showing a simple curved (leg-
of-mutton) gable\textsuperscript{7}. The house would have been built before fancy gables became popular — most are from around the 1770s to 1820s. Willem, the then owner, was a man of means but saw no need to keep up with the neighbours. More than half of the house was destroyed in a severe rainstorm in July 1822\textsuperscript{72} and its then owner, Daniel Johannes (who had the dovecote with its neo-classical gable built) also did not change the gable. \textit{Onverwacht} and neighbouring Morkel farm \textit{Voorburg} were logical stopovers for travellers, being about a day’s journey from the Cape, and for many years, the last farm before tackling the mountain range to the south-west interior.

Visitors included explorers, botanists, governors and administrators, farmers from the interior, Swellendam revolutionaries and missionaries. Horse carriages could not negotiate the difficult and rocky path over Hottentots Holland mountain chain. Until an adequate pass was constructed in 1830 (under Governor Sir Lowry Cole) transport was with slow ox wagons and on horseback. Several times the Morkels provided an extra team of oxen to help over the mountain pass.

The original \textit{Gantouw} passage, is about a 20 minute hike east of the modern pass. Ruts in the rocks made by the laden ox wagons can still be seen\textsuperscript{73}. On the way down, wheels were fixed into skids and the wagons pulled down the mountain like a sled to prevent it from careering out of control.

Lady Anne Barnard, the wife of the colonial secretary Andrew Barnard was a charming hostess who did much to smooth relationships between the British forces and the locals during the first occupation. She made several journeys to the towns and farms outside Cape Town. In May 1798 a month’s leave was given to Andrew Barnard and he and Lady Anne spent it in travelling to the interior, as far as Swellendam\textsuperscript{74}. The first stage of their visit took them to \textit{Meerlust}, the farm of Philippus Albertus Myburgh, cousin of the Morkel brothers, where they had a sumptuous meal.

Afterwards they went on to \textit{Onverwacht}, the Morkel’s farm. Here every one was away, except a tutor of moralizing and philosophical turn of mind. He was very kind and did his best for their comfort by providing them with feather beds for the night and lending them a team of oxen next morning\textsuperscript{75}. 

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{wagonwheelskid_ruts_gantouw_pass.png}
\caption{Wagonwheelskid Ruts. Gantouw Pass. \textit{Helderbergbasin.blogspot}}
\end{figure}
THE FIRST THREE GENERATIONS

Die Bos homestead 1976

Photo: Author, with Sons Philip, André, Daniel

Camera Lucida Drawing of Die Bos by Sir John Herschel 1835

Hopkins, p15
In 1803, the botanist Dr Henry Lichtenstein travelled with General Janssens (the Dutch Governor of the Colony), his aide-de-camp Captain Paravincini di Capelli and several attendants to Swellendam. They rested in the heat of the day 'at an opulent farm belonging to Willem Morkel' (Voorburg) and had there a 'most splendid dinner, the main feature of which was 'a great variety of sea fish drawn from the abundant stores of these furnished by False Bay'. They stopped briefly at Onverwacht where they were joined by Daniel Johannes Morkel who accompanied them to the foot of Hottentots Holland Kloof which they found extremely steep and difficult.

The missionary, Ignatius Latrobe, passed through in February 1816 and reached Mr Morkel's farm (either Voorburg or Onverwacht) at Hottentots Holland where 'a slave took pity on us and our beasts, provided the latter and our groom with good quarters and food and showed us into an empty room, with a plate of peaches on the table. In an adjoining chamber stood two empty bedsteads, on one of which with my portmanteau for my pillow, I enjoyed some refreshing sleep for about three hours. My companion slept in a chair'. The next morning the family received them kindly, 'lamenting' that they had not been aware of the arrival of visitors and gave them a good breakfast.

Sir John Herschel, Astronomer Royal at the Cape from 1834 to 1838, visited Onverwacht in September 1835. He was the son of the famous William Herschel, who discovered the planet Uranus. Sir John was a brilliant scholar who made substantial contributions to astronomy and also photography. For example, he discovered the use of hypo thiosulphate to fix photos and coined the terms positive and negative used in photography. He used a camera lucida as an aide to sketch the house at Die Bos. He describes Die Bos:

'a very large farm with an immense Vineyard enclosed in a square of tall firs in single rows like a vast colonnade within which is smaller (yet large) square similarly enclosed for an orchard. The house stands aside from the squares & is like all Dutch houses one
story, thatched & forming 3 sides of a square on a raised terrace or stoop with the slave houses, stables &c at a distance forming quite a Town’.

The house at Die Bos contains some lovely pieces of furniture handed down through the generations. Cousin Hanna (h2 Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel) showed me around and I took some photos. In the entrance hall is Catharina Pasman’s large ornamental *kis* (chest) shown in chapter 3. Also in the entrance hall is a 18th century Dutch style grandfather clock bought by second generation b4 Willem Morkel. The *Liefdekrans* and family crest from *Stamvader* Philip’s time hang on the wall. In a corner is a striking stinkwood display cabinet/writing desk. The window panes of the cabinet showed their age with gas bubbles in the glass. Hanna told me it lay discarded for a long time outside in the chicken run until his father, *oom* John brought it into the house to store a horse harness. It has been nicely restored and placed in a prominent spot in the entrance hall.

An interesting piece is a sideboard called *die prul* (lit. shoddy work). When Catharina Jacoba Theunissen married Hendrik Johannes Morkel in June 1821, her father Marthinus Wilhelmus Theunissen of Vergelegen had a camphor tree on the farm chopped down to make two sideboards — one for each of his daughters on their marriage. The camphor trees were planted for W.A. van der Stel at Vergelegen around 1700. The sideboards were made before the trees were declared national monuments. Apparently the workmanship of the sideboard was not the best — hence the term. It looked fine to me, but the family kept it in a side room off the dining room. Now it is a valued family heirloom.
Stinkwood Display/writing Desk

Photo: Author

Grandfather Clock.
On the wall the Liefdekrans,
Family Crest and painting of the Dovecote.

Photo: Author

Slavebell at Die Bos
Fecit Amsteldam 1723

Photo: T. de Wet

Slavebell at Die Bos

Van der Merwe
First to Harvest

*Onverwacht* has always been a wine farm, as were other neighbouring farms, and in the time of the slaves, there was great rivalry as to which farm would first finish picking and pressing. On the final day of harvest, the slaves would, as they did every morning, gather at the farmhouse and sing their 'morning-song'. Then with shot-guns and mouth-organs they would hurry to the boundary of the farm, and fire a salute, and give a performance on their mouth-organs to let the neighbours know that *Onverwacht* had finished first as usual. They would then hurry back to the farm-house to a feast prepared by the mistress, washed down by *mos* (must, i.e. freshly pressed new wine) from the crop they had just gathered. Later in the year when the wine had matured, the broad band *Twee lêer* (two leaguer — a leaguer was a large barrel of wine) ox-wagons were inspanned and, laden with barrels of wine, hauled across the heavy sand of the Flats to Mowbray, to take the road to Cape Town and off-load their burden at the wine merchants in Strand Street. 79.
9 Dovecote

The main Cape Dutch building at Die Bos is the dovecote with its neoclassical and baroque gables. It has become a recognisable icon for the family. It was built around the early 1800s by third generation Daniel Johannes Morkel. But why? Was it a folly or did it serve a useful purpose?

DOVECOTES WERE common in the Middle-East and Europe for centuries but only a few exist at the Cape. The one at Die Bos was declared a national monument and has been photographed and painted many times.

The central gable is in the neoclassical style, which dates the structure around the turn of the 19th century. Architectural styles changed abruptly from the old florid baroque to the straight lines and triangles of the neoclassic. It was influenced by similar changes in Europe and it also coincided with the British occupation of the Cape, first in 1795 and again in 1806. The one at Die Bos is unusual having side enclosures or courts, not normally found in dovecotes. The side courts flank the central structure and have older baroque style gables, showing styles in transition. The builders, probably Malay slaves, had not forgotten earlier traditions.

I know of only three Cape Dutch dovecotes. One is in Cape Town, while a very similar one is on Meerlust, the farm of Daniel Johannes Morkel’s cousin, P.A. Myburgh. The Meerlust dovecote likely inspired the one at Die Bos. Apart from the decorative gables, the two structures are alike — a central dovecote and the two side courts. Some would view ornate dovecotes like this one as a kind of folly, popular in British estates at the time. However, they also were practical. Pigeons look after themselves and are easy to catch after dark when they roost in the dovecote. I remember having pigeon pie at Die Bos as a youngster.

Why build a dovecote? Apart from Meerlust, they were unknown on the old Cape farms. The family had no shortage of meat – chickens, geese, sheep, cattle and an abundance of fish in False Bay. Was there another reason — cock-fighting perhaps?
Cocking? -- in our family!

What were the side courts used for? Certainly not for raising pigeons. Maybe they were for cock-fighting. My uncle, oom Johnnie Bos (g2 J.A. Morkel) kept pigs in the side courts. However, according to Victor de Kock, they were used for cock-fighting. This pass-time was very popular amongst Malays, many of them slaves.

The side courts would have been ideal arenas for that purpose. Walled off for privacy, each court had space for the two rival groups at either end, with the cocks fighting in the middle. It is unlikely that they were built for the pleasure of slaves — they probably made use of it once it had been built.

Was Daniel Johannes a cocking enthusiast himself? Possibly. He had close connections with his cousin P.A. Myburgh at Meerlust, who was his commanding officer in the dragoons. If P.A. were into cock-fighting, he might have introduced Daniel Johannes to the ‘sport’. It is the most plausible explanation for the side courts of the dovecote I could find.

Frontispiece of P.W. Morkel’s Family History

P.W. Morkel
The Dovecote at Die Bos.

Photo: Cathy Morkel, 2010

The Dovecote at Meerlust, likely the model for Die Bos

It has been nicely restored since this historic photo was taken.

Phillida Brooke Simons p94
Ritmeester Jacobus Linde
Willem Morkel was a fellow Ritmeester.
Burrows p55.

Silver Cup
Awarded to Ritmeester Linde. Willem Morkel received a similar cup.
Burrows p55.

Luitenant General Jan Willem Janssens
Governor of the Cape 1803 – 1806.
Brooke Simons p64
10 The British Came, Left, Returned and Stayed

The British occupied the Cape in 1795 for about eight years and were required to hand it back to the Dutch in 1803 in the Treaty of Amiens. The VOC had gone and the Cape was now ruled by new Dutch Batavian Republic. They had it for three years when the British came back in force in 1806 and stayed. There are some interesting stories worth telling about how these events affected our family.

During the Final days of the VOC, four of Philip Morkel's grandsons served in the Stellenbosch Krygsraad (war council) which was a voluntary citizens' militia. In 1791 the 2nd company of Dragoons (dragonders) included three Morkel brothers, under the command of their cousin, P.A. Myburgh:

- P.A. Myburgh (44 yrs) of Meerlust, Captain and Commanding Officer.
- c4 P.H. Morkel (31) of Rome, Captain Lieutenant,
- c5 W. Morkel (29) of Voorburg, first Lieutenant,
- c6 D. J. Morkel (24) of Onwerwacht sub-lieutenant.

Phillipus Albertus Myburgh's mother was Philip and Catharina Pasman's daughter. He was a natural leader and had a strong influence on his Morkel cousins. They were still members of the Krygsraad in 1795 when the British occupied the Cape.

The British landed at Simon's Town and in August 1795, after overcoming weak resistance at Muizenberg, occupied the Cape. It had become attractive to the British after they lost the American colonies in 1776. Trade with the Far East, particularly
India, became important to Britain and the Cape was a key naval base to protect its interests. The opportunity came when the French army invaded Holland in 1794, five years after the Revolution. Pro-French local ‘patriots’ took command and established the Republic of Batavia. Prince William of Orange fled to England and on request, wrote an order to the Governors of all Dutch possessions to receive the British troops ‘in order to protect such Colonies and Settlements against the Enemy and to hold them under the condition that they would be restored to the Republic at the conclusion of general peace…’

The Dutch Authorities at the Cape had also received word from Holland (smuggled via an American ship) about the new Republic of Batavia, and that Prince William’s office and authority as Stadthouder had been abolished. The Cape was divided. The Authorities felt obliged to obey the new government in Holland while privately aligning with the English as representing the old order of the Prince of Orange. Many colonials were more in sympathy with the aims of the French revolution and had tired of the Dutch rule. Almost everyone disliked the idea of new British masters.

The new authorities required all inhabitants to sign an oath of allegiance. Those who refused would be imprisoned at the Castle and in a few cases, were banished from the Colony. At first the British took a fairly conciliatory role under General Craig while there was still the view that they were there to protect the Cape from falling to the French and that the Dutch would resume power. Later, in 1797, it became clear that the British intended to stay. Earl Macartney was appointed Governor and took a harder line, requiring a second oath to be administered, this time to the British Monarch (King George III), rather than to a temporary British administration.

The second oath was resented by some, and by the expiry date several members of the Krysgraad had not complied. Philippus Albertus (P.A.) Myburgh was the most outspoken and sent a somewhat convoluted letter to the Landdrost in which he queried his authority, the need for a second oath and the ambiguity of whether the Krygsraad had been disbanded or not with the occupation. P.A. was a strong-willed person. He had spent years as a big game hunter in the interior exploring deep into the then wild Africa, crossing the Orange River. He did not suffer bureaucracy kindly — apart from playing games with the British, he also wrote a caustic letter about inadequate seating for his wife in the Stellenbosch church.

The Landdrost sent Myburgh’s letter on to Lord Macartney, who wrote a note on its margin that for the protection of the district, dragoons would be quartered with those not taking the oath. The French Revolution was very much on the minds of the
British and Macartney was determined to stamp out any Jacobin tendencies in his jurisdiction. The Colonial Secretary, Andrew Barnard (husband of Lady Anne Barnard) twice went to Stellenbosch to enforce the taking of the oath and had some trouble with the Myburghs of Meerlust, but eventually they took the oath.

Nevertheless the quartering proceeded. Lord Macartney was tolerating no nonsense. He instructed that the recalcitrants had to provide forage and maintenance for as many dragoons as the Governor may judge proper. ‘For, as their excuses are neither reasonable nor admissible it will be but proper that they should maintain the party sent for their own defence’ 88.

The Myburgh family between them had 42 dragoons stationed on three farms and the two Morkel brothers, Philip Hendrik and Daniel, 10 dragoons each:

- P.A. Myburgh for him and his son P.A. Myburgh — 22 dragoons.
- P.A. Myburgh Senr. for his son G. Myburgh — 10 dragoons.
- J.A. Myburgh — 10 dragoons.
- c6 Daniel Morkel — 10 dragoons
- Dirk Cloete — 10 dragoons

* P.H. Morkel was married to Johanna Petronella Malan. Her mother, Maria Rosina née Loubser remarried Martin Melck and farmed at Groot Paardevlei, bordering Somerset West.

==============

**Welcoming the Dragoons**

Perhaps to their bewilderment, P.A. Myburgh welcomed the British dragoons, and their horses, to Meerlust, sharing his table, his food and wine with them. In return the soldiers offered their services in his fields and vineyards gratis, letting slip to their host that their Captain was much cast down in spirits as his bride of only one day had been left behind in Cape Town. P.A. sent his horse carriage to collect the bride and installed them in the best guest room in the house. An episode worthy of Gilbert & Sullivan. Eventually the dragoons were recalled. In appreciation for their stay, two dragoons made and presented the family with a finely crafted table of wild olive wood, which is still in the Meerlust home 89.

It is very likely that the Morkel brothers followed their cousin and Captain’s lead and extended similar hospitality to the dragoons on their farms.

==============
Batavarian Republic

On 25 March 1802 the British and the French signed the Treaty of Amiens which temporarily ended hostilities in Europe and recognised the revolutionary French government. Under the terms of the treaty, signed by Joseph Bonaparte, the brother of Napoleon, the Cape was handed back to the Batavian Republic. General Janssens was appointed Governor and welcomed by the locals. *Die Kaap was weer Hollands* (The Cape was Dutch again).

Shortly after his installation by the visiting Commissary de Mist, Governor Janssens left Cape Town to visit the eastern part of the colony to ascertain how matters were standing between the colonists, the Xhosas and the Hottentots. His party of seven included his aide-de-camp Captain W.B.E. Paravincini di Capelli. They travelled in three wagons, each drawn by 12 oxen.90

Taking their midday meal at Meerlust, the farm of P.A. Myburgh, they reached Voorburg which belonged to Captain Willem Morkel in the afternoon. Here the Governor and his party spent the night. Di Capelli noted in his diary that the evening meal was a lavish one and added: ‘good beds, laden tables, who would not wish to travel thus’. On reaching the farm Onverwacht, they were joined by the owner, Captain D.J. Morkel who accompanied them to the foot of the Hottentots Kloof (Gantouw Pass the site of the later Sir Lowry’s Pass) — which they found extremely steep and difficult.91

During the Batavian period, Hercules Morkel (the fourth brother, (aged 36 in 1803) was a veld-cornet at Hottentots Holland and Willem Wz (Willem’s son, 41 in 1803) had risen to be a *Ritmeester* (lit: Riding master) or Commandant. Those who had to keep watch at Hottentots Holland *op orde van den gouverneur en chef* (on order of the Governor-in-Chief) under the Company of the *Ritmeester* c5 Willem Morkel were92:

- Captain c6 Daniel Morkel,
- Lieut. Phillipus Myburgh,
- 1st Lieut. d2 Willem Morkel Wz, *Wagtmeester.* (lit: Watch master)
- *Wagtmeester* d1 Willem Morkel Jz,

(*Daniel Morkel (39 in 1803) was Ritmeester Willem’s brother. The other two Willem Morkels would have been Willem’s son (21) and Philip Hendrik’s son (22). Philippus Myburgh (29 in 1803) was the son of P.A. Myburgh of Meerlust, and married to Willem’s youngest sister, Helena Catharina Morkel).*

*Ritmeester* Willem Morkel distinguished himself during the time of the Batavian Republic and was highly praised by General Janssens. The General was working hard to get the Cape into a fair state of defence when he heard of the recurrence of
European hostilities in 1804. Most of his regulars had been recalled to Holland, and he was left with only the resources of the inhabitants and the Waldeck regiment of mercenaries. He increased the Hottentot Regiment to 600, and encouraged enlisting by the burghers in their various units. These were instructed to be armed and prepared. Among those units were the dragoons of Ritmeesters Morkel, Wium and Linde (from Swellendam).

The ‘Kaapsche Courant’ dated the 29th October, 1804, states that The Governor and General-in-Chief accompanied with part of the general staff made a ‘tournée’ along the Hottentots Holland and Stellenbosch, and on the 19th of October, inspected the company of burgher cavalry under the Ritmeesters Wium and Morkel. They were pleased at the way those officers carried out their duties. The men were spick and span and appeared much better exercised than one would have thought possible in the time they had been under arms. They were diligent and content, their officers beloved and respected. The Governor and General-in-Chief were entertained to some hospitality by the family of Ritmeester Morkel and had lunch at Stellenbosch with the Landdrost in company with the officers.

On the night between the 1st and 2nd February, 20 men of the Hottentot Batallion and three corporals had deserted. The cause was not known, but the most guilty was probably the Hottentot corporal Oerson Africaner who had also deserted under the English. The deserters were well armed. The mounted burghers under Linde, Wium, Human and Morkel pursued them and, in the battle five deserters lost their lives and one was wounded. Two of the burghers, Roux and Swanepoel, were wounded, and Matthias Zaayman of Human's company was killed. General Janssens was generous in his awards for this action. To the parents of Zaayman were given the use of a loan-farm as long as they lived, and Roux and to Swanepoel received similar farms. Ritmeesters Willem Wium, Willem Morkel, Linde and Human, were presented with silver cups. On one side of each cup, was an inscription describing the event and under it the Ritmeester's name, while on the reverse side were the letters B.R, standing for Batavian Republic. Sadly, Willem's beaker has been lost. Linde's has survived as in the photo.

The British are back

THE RULE of the Batavian Republic came to an end with the capture of the Cape by the English in 1806. They defeated the Dutch near Blaauwberg Strand, due mainly to their overwhelming naval and military power, and by the defection of the German mercenary troops of the Waldeck Regiment. General Janssens retreated
towards Hottentots Holland, and he spent the first night at Phillipus Albertus Myburgh's farm Meerlust\textsuperscript{96}.

The treaty was signed at Brink's Inn at the foot of the Gantouw Pass in Hottentot's Holland. Before that General Janssens had said goodbye to his last few faithful supporters, among whom were the Morkels. Commandant M.W. Theunissen of Vergelegen was mentioned as being conspicuous for bravery in the battle\textsuperscript{97}.

In the words of his own despatch: ‘On the 10th January 1806 Cape Town capitulated... Burgher Cavalry Captains Wium, Morkel, and van Reenen, were honourably discharged. Their parting was affecting. The burghers shed tears when they took leave of their unfortunate Governor’\textsuperscript{98}.

General Janssens, himself a gentleman of great courtesy and courage, was treated with respect and consideration by the victors. After a wait of six weeks, he and his family and remaining Dutch were taken to Holland in British ships, where they arrived to discover that Napoleon's brother Louis had been crowned as king of the Netherlands. Janssens was held in high regard in spite of the loss of the Cape. He served in high office and by the end of 1807 he was Minister of War\textsuperscript{99}. The British also honoured the loan farms Janssens had allocated to his loyal and brave officers.

\section*{The coward kicked off the stoep}

At a crucial moment in the battle of Blaauwbergstrand the mercenary Waldeck Regiment deserted and ran away. Their cowardice turned the tide. General Janssens now not only had to fight the British with diminished forces, but also had to use much needed troops to detain the deserters in the Castle.

Their commanding officer came to Meerlust to apologise for the conduct of his troops, but General Janssens, in disgust literally kicked him off the stoep of the house.

Why did they defect? Apart from the obvious reason of cowardice, they would have been ambivalent to fight the British. They had formerly fought with them in 1776 during the American battles for Independence. Were they reluctant to fight their former allies? Also the British King George III still had strong family connections and support in Germany.
11 We Need a Town and Church

Three Morkel brothers and a neighbour established the town of Somerset West and church in 1819. Up to then, their nearest town was Stellenbosch and the journey took several hours by horse cart. The way went through the Moddergat (lit. Mudhole) to Meerlust and then along the Eerste Rivier valley to Stellenbosch. Currently, with a modern highway skirting the mountain, it takes about fifteen minutes.

c4 PHILIP HENDRIK of Morgenster, c5 Willem of Voorburg and c6 Daniel Johannes of Onverwacht and neighbour Marthinus Wilhelms Theunissen, owner of Vergelegen, set out to do something about this inconvenience. In doing so, they exhibited an admirable level of community leadership and entrepreneurship. They obtained Government permission, bought land, had it divided, sold erven (lots or blocks) and used the proceeds to build the church — all without personal gain 100, 101.

There had been an earlier attempt to found a town. Henry Alexander, the Colonial Secretary intended to divide part of his farm Gustrouw/Fortuintjie, near present Gordons Bay, into town blocks but did not proceed.

On behalf of the Voorstanders (promoters), P.H. Morkel wrote a letter on February 1817 to the authorities for the allocation of 20 morgen at the foot of the pass over the Hottentots Holland mountains to establish a church. They would build the church from public subscriptions but would require, as with others in the Colony, that the Government would provide the predikant (parson). However, they changed their minds and proceeded with a new plan. Instead of the foot of what later became Sir Lowry's pass, they located the town and church at its present location.
The Voorstanders announcing Somerset Town and that the proceeds of selling erven would be used to build the Church and Pastorie (vicarage).

Note of indebtedness signed by the Voorstanders for the Church organ.

Invitation to the inauguration of the Church on 13 February 1820.

Signatures to the minutes of the first meeting in 1820 of Die Kerkraad (Church Council).
IN APRIL 1817 M.W. Theunissen purchased a portion, 125 morgen 144 sq roods of the farm Cloetenburg from D.G. Steyn for 26,000 guilders (3 guilders = 1 rixdollar). Early in June 1817, on behalf of the Voorstanders, he wrote to the Governor, Lord Charles Somerset ‘that your Excellency will admit your Petitioners to call said village by the name of Somerset’. Lord Somerset ‘was rapidly covering the map of the colony with the titles of his family’ and agreed readily.

They also asked that a predikant be provided as soon as possible because they were already building the church. At a later stage another town with the Governor’s name was established on the eastern border of the Colony. The name was thus changed to Somerset West.

The erven were sold successfully and building of the church and pastorie (parsonage) proceeded with M.W. Theunissen giving his time free as builder. This pattern, where the Voorstanders paid for items (including the church organ) out of their own funds to be reimbursed later from the proceeds of sale of erven and public donations, was continued throughout the construction period. Building activities were delayed in September 1819 by a severe rainstorm accompanied by strong winds. Eventually the church was inaugurated on 13 February 1820. Building the Church cost 30,000 Rixdollars and the pastorie 7,034 Rixdollars.
The church organ was special. Most of the older churches in the colony had to wait years (80 years in the case of Cape Town) before they could afford an organ. It was described as ‘a church organ with Mahogany Gothic front case 13 feet high with guilt pipes in front, 10 stops and swell’\textsuperscript{104}. It was ordered from England and cost 6,000 Rixdollars and was installed in June 1819.

In 1822 the town was devastated by a very severe winter storm with much damage being done to the church. The north gable fell and pews and galleries were crushed to pieces. Parts of the unfinished parsonage suffered. Following an appeal by the Landdrost of Stellenbosch, the government made funds available for repairs.

In spite of several appeals, the Government was unable to supply a predikant. Ds (Rev) Meent Borcherds of Stellenbosch helped out as much as his duties allowed. Eventually Ds Johannes Spykers of Swellendam was appointed. Elder c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel took an ox-wagon over the perilous Hottentots Holland Kloof and further to distant Swellendam to fetch Ds Spyker and his household goods\textsuperscript{105}.

The church was a fairly simple utilitarian building but amazingly large and well built considering that the settler population of the area was only around 200 at the time. A tribute to the foresight of the Voorstanders.
Seating Problems

The History of the Church of Somerset West relates constant problems with seating arrangements for wives. Men had seats along the walls, with the centre area reserved for the ladies. They arrived, each with a slave carrying a chair and *gesangboek* (hymnal), and were seated according to rank. This caused conflict and argument about who outranked whom. The annual meeting to decide seating arrangements (*Verzetting der Stoelen*) was exhausting and challenging. Philip Hendrik Morkel (1760 - 1831), as the senior and oldest Elder, had this responsibility and coped most of the complaints.

Soon after the inauguration, the widow of Paul Uri complained that she had to sit behind younger women whose husbands were of lower rank than her husband had been. In addition her daughters had to sit in the back row with schoolchildren. The *Landdrost* instructed the church council to consider this complaint carefully and to respect the rights particularly of widows. He also included a copy of the extensive regulations regarding chair arrangements of the Stellenbosch church.

Field Cornet H.R. De Vos, while 'reluctant to complain' (*waarsch voor klachten*), appealed to *Landdrost* van Ryneveld. He could not allow that his wife be insulted (*in haar eer gekrenk*) when her chair was arbitrarily (*eygendunkelyk*) moved several times by Morkel. He could not agree to an informal arrangement (*minlike schikking*), and the issue had to be settled publicly. By placing the chair of his wife among people of lesser reputation, his whole family was insulted. The church council was unhappy over the tone of the letter (*ongepaste en beledigende uitdrukkingen*) and they went to Stellenbosch to put their side of the argument. M.W. Theunissen of *Vergelegen* wrote to 'oom Morkel' urging him to take the case to the Chief Justice, Sir John Truter, to tell him about the lies spread by de Vos. The *Landdrost* eventually decided that the *kerkraad* (church council) acted properly according to regulations and thus concluded the case.
In 1822 it was Koos Theunissen of Vergelegen (M.W.’s son) who complained that his wife’s chair was placed lower than Hercules Morkel’s wife. (The first wedding in the new church was between Hercules Morkel and Geertruida Woutrina de Vos, and they lived at Welgelegen). Morkel explained that Hercules told him that he had been promoted to wachtmeester and his wife was entitled to her place.

In the same year Wouter de Vos of Paardevallei wrote to Geachte Neef Morkel to express his unhappiness that his daughter Geertruy’s chair was set down below that of miss Teunis (sic) — most likely Theunissen. Geertruy was married to d4 Hercules Morkel, the son of c7 Hercules and Helena Munnik.

At this time d4 Hercules Morkel borrowed the penknife of Jacobus Pentz and scratched out Pentz’s name on his (Pentz) bench and from then on he (Hercules) occupied that bench. The church council had to discipline him.

The church council listened patiently to the claims and grievances but could not satisfy everyone. Appeals were lodged to the Landdrost, but when that office was abolished in 1828, the problems were back with the council. In 1829 the synod decided to abolish preferential seating, except for appointed government and kerkraad officials.
Part 2

Sport

12  The Rugby Morkels   69
13  The Cricket Morkels   79
Golden Jubilee, Somerset West Rugby Football Club. p73
12 The Rugby Morkels

For the first two to three decades of the 1900’s the Morkels were strong in Rugby Football in South Africa. Their team, Somerset West Rugby Football Club were champions year after year in the Western province. In 1914 there were twenty two of the family playing first class rugby and in 1921 five were in the Springbok international rugby team.\(^{107}\)

Their reputation in rugby endured for most of the 20\(^{th}\) century. They were the horrible Morkels in *The Covenant*, by James Michener, intimidating the fictional hero of the novel.

AT FAMILY gatherings at *Die Bos* one could count several Springbok internationals plus others who had played for Western Province (the regional team) many years before. I knew them as ‘uncles’ — Gerrit (Gerhard), Harry, Albert, and Bertie. My father quipped, ‘The Morkel brains are in their feet’. Newspaper articles about the rugby prowess of the family bordered on hero worship. There were also at least three outstanding Morkel players in Johannesburg at the time, Andrew, Douglas (Dougie) and William Somerset (Sommie).

**Morkels Who Played for South Africa:**

1903:  \(f4\) Andrew  
1906:  \(f4\) Andrew, \(g4\) Sommie (William Somerset), \(g6\) Douglas  
1910:  \(g6\) Douglas and \(f6\) Boy (William Herman)  
1912:  \(g6\) Douglas, \(f6\) Boy (W.H.), \(f7\) Gerhard, \(f8\) Jack  
1921:  \(f6\) W.H. (Boy), \(g5\) Royal, \(g2\) Harry, \(g2\) Henry, \(f7\) Gerhard  
1928:  \(?\) P.K. (Pieter Krije)

**Played for Transvaal:**  
\(g6\) Douglas, \(f4\) Andrew and \(g4\) Sommie (William Somerset)

**Played for Western Province:**  
\(f6\) Boy, \(f5\) Albert, \(f7\) Gerhard, \(g2\) Henry, \(f8\) Jack, \(g2\) Harry, \(f8\) Bertie and \(g5\) Royal.  
(Later: \(g1\) Hannes, \(h2\) Charles).

*P.W. Morkel, Family History p56.*
A Modest Start

A NUMBER of Morkel boys and their friends became enthusiastic about rugby in the 1890’s and they used to gather on the farm Rome after school. Armed with picks and shovels, they cleared space enough for a field, cutting away bushes taller than themselves, and keep the grass on the field in good condition. They had to lead water from a spring along a furrow, and cover it up when they were finished. They played barefooted, common at the time in Somerset West. 108

In 1893 a subscription list was started among themselves by boys attending the Somerset West Public School for the purpose of buying a rugby football. They each contributed three pence and a Dr. Dieperink kindly made up the rest. But not until 1904 did the Somerset West Rugby Football Club become affiliated to the Western Province Rugby Union. In the first team were four Morkels — Nicolaas, the captain, Albert, Jack and Adrian (Baby).

They loved their rugby and in those days there were no organised practices on match lines as there are today, no ‘nursing’ of prominent young players, no specialisation. Gerhard Morkel, for example, never made a study of kicking or practised it solely. He took his rugby in the early days of his career as a matter of course, and could kick with either foot naturally. They developed their skills and became champions on the field.

Rugby was big in Somerset West in those days, and interest ran high. By the time they caught the train connection back from an afternoon match in Cape Town, it would have been late at night. In 1909 one of the players took two carrier pigeons along when they played away matches. At half time and again immediately after the match pigeons were released with the scores. A young boy waited for the pigeons at their home roost and cycled to the hotel lounge where the scores were posted on a blackboard. Telephone links were still in the future at that time.

The Somerset West team was strong in the glory days. They won matches so regularly that the team was booed when they played at Cape Town and Stellenbosch. At the end of the 1914 season the Rugby Union organised a match between the Somerset West team and the best team (the ‘all comers’) picked from the other clubs. The newspapers predicted a win for the All Comers, but in spite of not playing at their best, the Somerset West team won 15 to 11. The team contained five Morkels — Gerhard, Jack, Albert, Royal and Boy 109.

In the year 1914 there were twenty two Morkels playing first team rugby in various parts of South Africa. This remarkable family record impressed Sir Abe Bailey, and he
contemplated sending a team of Morkels to England when the Great War broke out and the idea was quashed. The team was to have been composed of 23 members of the family. The 23rd man was Denys Morkel, later an international cricketer. He was playing under 13 rugby at the time and would have been the team’s official mascot.\(^{10}\)

**Some outstanding players:**

**g6 Douglas Morkel**

AS A PLACE and drop kicker of sheer length and accuracy, Dougie Morkel has probably never been equalled in the history of the game. In 1910 he inspired a member of Dr. Smythe’s team to write: ‘Douglas Morkel had our hearts in our mouths in any match he played against us. He wore red stockings, and a penalty might produce the uncanny spectacle of Douglas sniping at our posts from his own twenty-five yard line’\(^{111}\) \(^{112}\).

One kick that will always be remembered is his penalty goal for the 1912 Springboks against France. The match was really a picnic, for the French backs were very weak. During the game the referee gave a wrong decision, and, not wishing to benefit from a mistake, Billy Millar, the Springbok captain threw the ball to Douglas Morkel and told him to boot the ball back to the full-back. The infringement took place 10 yards inside the Springboks half. Douglas laughed and said: ‘Billy, I’m going to take a pot shot at goal’. The French full-back was standing somewhere on the 25 yard line when Douglas’s foot connected with the ball. With a perfect trajectory it soared into the air and the French full-back stood fascinated for a moment and then turned to run behind the goalposts. He had got there when the ball crossed the bar and with mouth wide open he started to clap. And so did the crowd for a long time. One Frenchman ran out of the crowd and kissed Morkel. Billy Millar afterwards said it was the most wonderful dropped goal he had ever seen.
During the visit of Dr. Smythe’s team in 1910 Douglas kicked a ball into the trees which used to be behind the old Malay stand at Newlands. The governor-general and party were seated near the touch-line and Douglas had to ask them to move so that he could get more room for his run. He drop-kicked and the ball went between the posts and far beyond the trees.

Gerhard Morkel

GERHARD’S NAME was even more of a household word than Douglas’s. He was the perfect full-back. He was not a fast runner, but he was always in the right position. His fielding was heart-breaking for his opponents. He could kick with either foot. While he reigned he was regarded as the greatest full-back in the world. His discovery by the Somerset West team was unique. Bare-headed and bare footed, he stood on the Somerset West station one Saturday morning, one among a crowd of schoolboys who had congregated to see their team catch the train for Caledon, whom they were to play in a friendly match. Only 14 players turned up at the station. They looked around and spotted Gerhard, then barely 17 years of age. They decided to fill up the team with him. A hat was sent around for the “bobs” (a bob was a shilling or 12 pence — about ten cents after decimalisation) to pay for his fare. Gerhard acquitted him so well that day that he was made a regular member of the side.

Broughton interviewed the famous Phil Mostert (a well known Springbok captain during the 1920s and 1930s — also from Somerset West) who had played for South Africa in New Zealand. He was in no doubt at all about Gerhard’s greatest match. It was the last test match at Wellington. Each side had scored a victory, and this was the crucial ‘rubber’ match. For a week prior to the match the Springboks had glorious weather. Forty-eight hours before the match it started to rain. It rained heavily until the ground was almost completely under water when the teams ran on.

This was the match which the New Zealand papers called the world battle for rugby supremacy. New Zealand was football
mad. The people could talk of nothing else but the test. The players were terribly keyed up. The gates opened at 8 am and the crowd flocked in and took their seats in the open stand in the pouring rain. Over 40,000 people witnessed this game in the mud and water. It rained throughout the match and the players’ vision was obscured. The Springboks could hardly see their full-back, Gerhard Morkel. But they heard the smack, smack of the ball in his hands as he caught it and they knew they were safe.

Gerhard was well past his prime at that time, but he played a marvelous game on this water-logged field. Not once did he misfield the slippery ball and his kicking for touch bordered on the miraculous. Moffat, the New Zealander, played to Gerhard relentlessly and in the final ten minutes it seemed impossible for the Springboks to hold out. But out of the gloom loomed Gerhard, an heroic figure to drive the All Blacks back with deadly touch-kicking. No score was a fitting conclusion to the game and also a fitting end to the international career of a great fullback and fine sportsman.

The Morkels remember Gerhard’s magnificent display at Newlands (Cape Town) in a Town challenge match against Stellenbosch. Right up to the closing minutes there was no score at all. Then Gerhard got the ball on the touchline … and dropped a wonderful goal from 35 to 40 yards out to win the game for Somerset West.

They remember Gerhard’s wonderful high punts down the middle of the field. In the face of oncoming forwards he was fearless. He just stopped down, picked up the ball and barged through them. As soon as he was out of the ruck he kicked to touch. He could screw kick the ball out with either feet.

**Jack, Henry, Boy, Harry and Royal Morkel**

*f8* JACK (JAN Willem Hurter Morkel) was probably the tallest and heaviest centre playing for South Africa at that time. He as a six–footer and very powerful with a most effective ‘hand–off’ and famous for his short stab punts. In a game in England Jack secured the ball near his own goal line. He ran a little, then executed one of his famous short punts, over the opposing three-quarter’s heads. He raced on at full speed and took the ball in his flight. Only the opposing full-back faced him now. So he repeated the short punt. Racing on at top speed, he once again took the ball in his stride and scored under the posts. He had run almost the length of the field, finishing a wonderful piece of work by winning the match for the Springboks. Jack joined the armed forces during the first World War and died in 1916 of dysentry in German East Africa (Tanganyika). Jack at centre and Henry Morkel on the wing were great scorers for Somerset West and Western Province.
Boy, (f6 William Herman Morkel) is numbered as one of South Africa’s greatest forwards and an able team captain. In 1912, at the end of the second Springbok tour of Great Britain, the overseas critics described him as the ‘Prince of Forwards’. He played for South Africa against Dr Smythe’s team in 1910, captained the 1921 Springboks in the test matches in New Zealand, and with Gerhard, Jack and Henry, was the mainstay of the Somerset West team in its palmiest days.

When Harry (g2 Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel) was still at school he struggled to gain a place in the under 14 team. He looked so ungainly and that the general opinion was that he would be good only as a forward. He asked to play at wing and built a reputation in that position. He was big, strong and fast and became a feared player. When an opponent tried to tackle him, he simply pushed him out of the way and carried on running spectacularly — with his knees almost to his chin as he ran. Often 4 to 5 opponents would lie in the dust before he was brought to a standstill\textsuperscript{14}.

The largest Morkel physically was Royal (g5 Johannes Albertus Morkel) born in 1896. He was 6 ft 2 inches tall and weighed 230 lbs. He was a good swimmer and boxer and ran 100 yard sprints and even participated in high jump. His team mates told about his love for fish and chips and ginger beer when they played in Cape Town.

For all his strength and sporting prowess, Royal was also a bit of a hypochondriac and was regularly complaining about aches and pains in the train on the way to a match. Sadly, one day his complaints were ignored and he died after a match from an inflamed appendix. He was 32 years old.

By the end of the 1920s, most of the famous rugby players had retired. I was a student in the 1950s when the father of a friend commented ‘Oh, you are a Morkel. Do you play rugby? The family sure has gone backwards these days’. Looking at me he had a point, but at that time the son of Gerhard, Hannes (Johannes Albertus) Morkel captained the Western Province rugby team for many years (1946 to 1951) and narrowly missed selection as a Springbok. John Morkel, Bertie’s son played for Western Province and later was captain of the Rhodesian Team that beat the Alblacks. My brother, Charles, played for Western Province in 1952 and 1953. He was known as the Ox of the South, but a knee injury cut short his promising rugby career.
Tall, Strong and Horrible

Tall and strong runs in the family. Protea cricket player Morné Morkel is 2.01 metres tall. His grandfather, Daniel Johannes Morkel was a champion shotput and discus thrower with the nickname Vat, or ‘barrel’ for his powerful build. My brother Charles played first class rugby for Western Province and was 1.93 metres (6ft 4inches) tall. The trait seems to go back long in the past.

Sir John Herschel visited Onverwacht in 1835 and described his host Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1799 -1859) as ‘slenderly informed tho’ by no means slenderly personed’ 115. Hendrik’s younger brother, Daniel Johannes Morkel (1801 – 1843) was known as Dik Daniel (lit: thick Daniel). He was not fat, but tall and large, weighing 300 pounds (136 kg) and athletic.

Being tall, strong and athletic was part of the success of the rugby Morkels. Best selling author, James Michener refers to this in The Covenant116. While his characters are fictional, the information about the Morkels and rugby are based on fact.

‘Twenty-two Morkels were playing in this decade, brothers, cousins and unrelated solitaries, all of them stout lads. .... Once, the four biggest men facing him in the tight confrontations were Morkels, and as he left that game, he told his coach ‘as if I had slipped by accident into a threshing machine’. ... It was the day after a game in which five horrible Morkels had run up and down his spine ....’

Royal (Johannes Albertus Morkel) was known for his steamroller tactics. In 1919 ships with Australian Armed Forces stopped over at Cape Town returning from the battlefields of Europe. A rugby team was formed and a match arranged against Somerset West who at that time was the strongest club team around. During the match Royal burst through and pushed the Australian full back out of the way to score behind the goal posts. Shortly thereafter it happened again. He had thrust his way through the forwards and was storming on to the Australian full-back. When the full-back saw him coming, he turned and ran to his own goal posts and sheltered behind one of them. Royal scored the try between the posts and stood amused with his hands on his hips looking at his unfortunate opponent. By this time the Australian captain caught up and berated his team mate. ‘What made you run away?’ he asked. The full-back answered: ‘I can stop a German tank, but I can’t stop this damn Dutchman’.
Tall, Strong and Horrible (ctd)

Bertie (Johannes Gijsbertus Freislich Morkel, 1887 - 1953 who played for Somerset West) was a gentle person who drove a small British car. One day on his way back from Cape Town, he did something wrong which infuriated the driver behind him. Both cars stopped and a small angry man emerged from the other car. He strode forcefully towards him to give him an earful. As Bertie got out of his car to apologise, he towered above the fellow, who turned around without a word, got back in his car and drove off, clearly intimidated by Bertie's size.
Rugby Morkel Family Lines (Springboks & Province)

Five of the ten Morkel Springboks were closely related and were the sons of three Myburgh sisters who had married two Morkel brothers and a nephew.

The line to Hendrik Johannes (1789 – 1859) is as follows:
1st:  a1 Philip Morkel (1677 – 1735) x Catharina Pasman (1691 – 1764).
2nd:  b3 Willem Morkel (1718 – 1788) x Helena Catharina Malan (1736 – 1825)
3rd:  c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel (1764 – 1825) x Maria Dorothea Louw (1775 – 1807)
4th:  d7 Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1798 – 1859) x Catharina Jacoba Theunissen (1803 - 1831)
   xx Esther Elizabeth Morkel (1813 - 1880)

Harry and Royal are from the first marriage of Hendrik Johannes Morkel with Catharina Jacoba Theunissen:
5th:  e3 Hendrik Louw Morkel (1825 – 1889) x Elizabeth Anna Morkel (1830 – 1896).
6th:  f1 Hendrik Louw Morkel (1865 – 1895) x Sarah C.B. Myburgh (1859 – 1925)
7th:  g2 Hendrik Louw Morkel (Harry) (1888 – 1957)
     g5 Johannes Albertus Morkel (Royal) (1894 – 1926)

Hendrik’s 2nd marriage with his cousin Esther Elizabeth Morkel produced three international rugby players.
8th:  f5 Johannes Albertus Mijburgh Morkel (Albert) (1883 – 1968) (WP and NZ Military Touring)
     f7 Pieter Gerhard Morkel (Gerhard) (1888 – 1964) Gerhard’s son, Johannes Albertus Morkel (Hannes) (1919 – 1951) captained the WP team.
     f8 Jan Willem Hurter Morkel (Jack) (1890 – 1916) WP and Springbok

Andrew Morkel is descended from the third son, d9 Willem Morkel of c6 Daniel Johannes and M.D. Louw
d9 Willem Morkel (1803 – 1876) x Isabella Maria Zeederberg (1809 – 1886) Morgenster
e5 Hendrik Louw Morkel (*1838) x J. M. M. van Breda (1847 – 1915) Broadlands
f12 Daniel Johannes Andries (Andrew) Morkel (1882 - 1965)

Henry William Morkel (1894 - ?) is descended from third generation c7 Hercules Morkel (1767 – 1804).
3rd:  c7 Hercules Morkel (1767 – 1808) x Helena Munnik (1772 – 1818)
4th:  d7 Philip Hendrik Morkel (1804 – 1837) x Hester Loedolff
5th:  e1 Philip Hendrik Morkel (1835 – 1888) x Johanna Hermina Dempers (1816 - ?)
6th:  f4 Philip Hendrik Morkel (1861 – 1924) x Catharina Josina Wilhelmina Destroo (1861 – 1927)
7th:  g2 Henry William Morkel (1894 - ?)
13 The Cricket Morkels

Google the word ‘Morkel’ to see how overwhelmingly the two cricket brothers, Albie and Morné dominate the listings. There is so much readily available on the internet about these two outstanding players that for our story I shall be brief about their most recent achievements — which can readily be updated on the internet. Our contribution will be to place them and cricket in context to the broader family.

HISTORICALLY THE family has been known for its prowess in rugby, but there has been an interest in cricket for over a century. Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1842 – 1902), uncle of Rugby Springboks Sommie and Dougie, was elected in November 1886 as Chairman of the first Cricket Club on the very new goldfields of the Witwatersrand\textsuperscript{117}. One of his sons was a ‘very fair left-handed bowler’. Dougie and his older brother Harry were also good cricketers\textsuperscript{118}.

William (Dooley) Morkel

d9 DOOLEY MORKEL (1864 – 1926) was a remarkable sportsman\textsuperscript{119}.

Born in Somerset West he was a senior public servant and retired to his Windsor farm near Cape Town at Diep River. He was keen on cricket from his younger days, and played for Claremont Cricket Club in Cape Town for many years, primarily as a bowler. Somewhat later he moved to Bellville and was captain and the life of the local cricket club for many years. At the age of 55 he took 8 wickets for 24 runs and at 61, he took part in an Old Crocks match for Villagers against Hamiltons. Two of Dooley's sons, Denys and Ray, played first class cricket, inspired by their father.

Denys Paul Beck Morkel

g4 DENYS MORKEL, (1906 – 1980) stepping straight from his school IX into the Western Province Cricket Club’s first team in 1924, succeeded at once, both as bowler and batsman. The following year, 1924 – 5 he scored more runs than anyone else in the side and took the second largest number of wickets. In addition he was the
reserve bowler for South Africa in the fourth unofficial test against a British team. He first appeared for South Africa in 1927-28, when he played in all five tests against England, but with modest results. On the tour of England in 1929 he did much better. Tall and well-built, he bowled fast medium away-swingers with an easy action and was probably the best bowler on the team. He had decided to settle in England and was not available to play against the MCC side in 1930-31. His health declined and he was not a success on the 1931-32 tour of Australia. In 1932 Sir Julien Cahn helped him to establish a business in the motor trade in Nottingham, which became a flourishing concern. He continued to play in England and made nearly 10,000 runs and took 400 wickets. During World War II he served in the British Army. He died suddenly in a Nottingham (UK) hospital on 6 October 1980, aged 74 years.

Ray Morkel

g5 RAYMOND KENNETH Bellville Morkel (1908 – 1953) was a left-handed bowler and batsman and played first class cricket: Orange Free State (1926/27); Western Province (1927/28 – 1930/31); and Border (1935/36 – 1939/40).

Albie, Morné and the Vereeniging Morkels

THIS SPORTING family is the progeny of Daniel Jacobus Malan (Vat) Morkel (1917 – 1968), who was born at Die Bos, second son of Johannes Albertus Morkel (Johnnie Bos) (1882 – 1966). Vat was a champion athlete, specializing in discus and shotput and studied Physical Education at Stellenbosch University. He was an inspirational teacher and sports coach at a high school in Vereeniging, a town on the banks of the Vaal River, the border between the then Transvaal and Orange Free State provinces. His sons, Albert was a first class cricket player and Gerhard a national discus champion.
Albert Morkel

VAT’s SON Albert was born in 1950, and followed his father, teaching at the same school in Vereeniging. He played first class cricket for Transvaal Country Districts and for the Province. He and his wife, Mariana, have three sons, j1 Malan, j2 Albie and j3 Morné. Malan Morkel born 1978 played for Gauteng XI was a seam bowler who took 2 wickets, including that of Brian Lara of the West Indies on November 11, 1998. He is coach and manager of H/S Garsfontein Cricket Club.

Albie Morkel

j2 JOHANNES ALBERTUS Morkel, born 1981 is a right-arm fast-medium bowler and left-handed batsman. He rose to prominence playing for his provincial side Easterns, against the touring West Indians in 2003-04 when he defied food poisoning to score a century and take five wickets at Benoni. Ray Jennings, his provincial coach and a former South African wicketkeeper, predicted that he would become a world-class all-rounder, and Albie was given his first taste of international action when...
picked for the tour of New Zealand in 2003-04. However, his early career brought only a glimpse of his talent and he always looked a perfect Twenty-20 cricketer, where he continues to excel. He made his test debut for South Africa against Australia in the third Test in Cape Town in March 2009, replacing his brother who was dropped for the game. He has played in several tests for South Africa. He has been man-of-the-match against Australia and also man-of-the-series for One Day Internationals. Albie played for the Chennai super Kings since the inauguration of the Indian Premier League (IPL) and has continued with them for several seasons. For the 2014 season he joined the Royal Challengers Bangalore.

Morné Morkel

MORNÉ MORKEL, born 1984, is an out-and-out fast bowler who has the pace and height to trouble the best. He made his first-class debut in 2003 and earned promotion to the Nashua Titans in the 2006 domestic season. Allan Donald marked him out as national potential with good words for the lanky fast bowler's ability to extract bounce and bowl genuinely fast. He sat out of much of the 2005 season due to injury, but excelled in a fast bowling camp organised by the South African board under Donald’s watchful eye.

During India's tour of South Africa for the 2006 – 07 season, Morné played for Rest of South Africa against the tourists. On the opening day of the four-day fixture at Potchefstroom, he cut a swathe through the Indian top order with 4 for 29. That showing earned him a test call-up, and he made his debut in the second test at Durban when Dale Steyn was ruled out, showing good application in an unbeaten 32, shepherding his fellow tail-enders, and pushing South Africa on to a score that seemed scarcely probable earlier in the match. He added three quick wickets on day three to help South Africa to a fantastic win, but missed out on the final test at Cape Town.

He had a brief stint with Kent during the 2007 season and then impressed during the ICC World Twenty-20 when his pace and bounce proved too much for some top batsmen. A stress fracture early in the Pakistan tour which followed halted the rapid rise, and at the start of 2008, his spell at Yorkshire was cut short by injury, but he bounced back to lead South Africa's attack, without ever being at his best, on their victorious tour of England in July and August. In October 2008 he and his brother Albie became the first brothers in 56 years to be named as South African Cricket Annual Cricketers of the Year in the same season, and he was an important part of South Africa's successful tour of Australia. After a relatively quiet year, during which
he featured in South Africa’s squad for the World Twenty-20 but was overlooked for the Champions Trophy, Morné was recalled to the one-day team for the third ODI against England in November 2009. He continued to trouble batsmen with sharp pace and steepling bounce in the test series that followed, and came within a whisker of sealing a dramatic victory for South Africa in the third test at Cape Town when he removed an obdurate Ian Bell in his penultimate over.

He has played for Kent in the UK and Rajasthan Royals in India, where he played in the first three seasons of IPL, taking 25 wickets in 16 matches and collecting the purple cap for the best wicket-taking bowler. In South Africa he has played for Titans and in various international matches. In 2014 he played for Kolkata Knight Riders.

In Perth in November 2014 he was dubbed ‘Mighty Morné’ when, in a one day match against Australia he took two clean wickets, with a further three wickets falling to his bowling, 5 for 21, and he fielded two additional wickets to bowling by Steyn. Following the completion of the Cricket World Cup of 2015 played in Australia and
New Zealand, the International Cricket Council picked the team of the tournament. Only two South Africans were selected, A.B. de Villiers and Morné Morkel. Morné married Australian TV personality Roz Kelly on 7 December 2014 at Zorgvliet, Stellenbosch.
Part 3
Descendants of Willem Morkel
of Voorburg

14 Willem to Pieter Loreth Morkel  87
15 Goldfields Pioneers  91
16 Lammie Morkel and Family 99
17 Arthur L. Rubidge Morkel  103
18 Clifford Earle Southey Morkel  113
19 Ronald Norman Morkel  117
DESCENDANTS OF c5 WILLEM MORKEL OF VOORBURG

Family Tree for Selected Voorburg Morkels

- **a1 Philip Morkel x Catharina Pasman**
  - Onverwacht

- **b4 Willem Morkel x H.C. Malan**
  - Onverwacht

- **c5 Willem Morkel 1761 – 1821 x Anna Margaretha Wium 1763 – 1830**
  - Voorburg

- **d2 Willem Morkel 1785 - 1839 x Esther Leonora Louw 1807 – 1859**
  - Voorburg

- **e5 Pieter Loreth Morkel 1818 – 1878**
  - x Susanna Petronella Wessels 1821 – 1905
    - Zonnebloem Cape Town

- **e2 Hendrik Johannes Morkel 1810 - 1859**
  - x Geertruida Anna Louw 1814 -?
    - Paarl & Somerset West

- **f3 Petrus Johannes Morkel 1844 – 1905**
  - x Sarah Margaret Rubidge 1849 – 1909
    - Eastern Cape & Zoutpansberg

- **g1 Arthur Loreth Rubidge Morkel 1871 – 1937**
  - x Alice Hendrina Southey 1878 – 1931
    - Rubidge Morkels of Rhodesia

- **f4 Hendrik Johannes Morkel 1842 - 1902**
  - x Wilhelmina Johanna Moll
    - Kroonstad & Johannesburg

- **f5 Lambertus (Lammie) Dirk Petrus Morkel 1844 - 1921**
  - x Maria Magdalena Louw
    - Kroonstad/Steynrus

- **f6 Willem Morkel 1845 - ?**
  - x Johanna Helena Maritz
    - Kimberley & Johannesburg

- **g12 Somerset West Morkel 1884 - ?**
  - x Susan Kruger
    - Morgenster Settlers Tvl

- Seven children, including
  - Jacobus (Jim) Gideon Morkel
    - x Hendrika Christina Meintjes

- Seven children, including
  - Springboks g4 Sommies and g6 Dougie Morkel
14 Willem to Pieter Loreth Morkel

Third generation Willem Morkel's activities are described in earlier chapters, including his exploits as officer (ritmeester) during the second Dutch rule under General Janssens. He also joined his brothers to establish the town of Somerset West and its church. He inherited Voorburg, a farm lying alongside the Loureens River, split off from Onverwacht when his father Willem died in 1788.

THE WILL specified that a house and farm buildings be constructed on the farm. The house was located close to the bridge over the Loureens River at the entrance of the town of Somerset West. Willem (1761 – 1821) married Anna Margaretha Wium (1763 – 1830) and they had two sons and six daughters.

Only Willem (1785 – 1839) reached maturity, and he inherited Voorburg. He married Esther Leonora Louw (1763 – 1830) on 8 November 1807 and they had fourteen children, eight boys and six girls. Four children died young. Esther Leonora Louw was the daughter of Hendrik Louw and Hester Lore. Hendrik was the son of Jan Louw and Elisabeth Morkel, daughter of Stamvader Philip and Maria Biebouw. The Huguenot name Loret died out in South Africa with no male progeny, but it was preserved when son Pieter Loreth Morkel was named. Esther’s older sister (by 17 years)

When Willem died in 1839, Voorburg was sold, and it was renamed Bridgewater, being close to the bridge across the Loureens River. That part of Somerset West is still called Bridgewater. The Cape was going through tough economic times during the 19th century (a combination of vineyard pests such as Phylloxera and England abolishing tariffs against French wines made for a collapse of wine exports).
PIETER LORETH MORKEL
Butcher,
Shambles, No.4

In tendering his most sincere thanks to his friends and the public, who have so liberally patronized him since he commenced his business, begs most respectfully to inform them, that he will constantly supply them with the

BEST MEAT

that the market will at any time of the year afford, and trusts, by unwearied attention to the wants of customers, to merit a continuance of that favour which has so kindly manifest towards him.

Indian visitors and families residing in the neighbourhood of Rondebosch, Wynberg, or wherever Postwagons or Omnibusses pass, can likewise be furnished with every article that they require, to receive their orders, they may rely upon a punctual and speedy execution thereof.

ORDERS LEFT AT HIS RESIDENCE, ZONNEBLOEM, ARE EQUALLY ATTENDED TO AS THOSE LEFT AT THE SHAMBLES.

PIETER LORETH MORKEL
Slagter
Hal No.4

In het betuigen van zynnen opregten dank aan zyne Vrienden en het Publiek die hem zoo goedgunstig ondersteun hebben, neemt de vryheid hem eerbiediglyk te verwittigen, dat hy hen steeds zal voorzien met het

BESTE VLEESCH

dat de Markt te eeniger tyd het jaar oplevert, en vertrouwt door onvermoeide oplettenheid aan de behoeften zyner Begunstigers, eene voortdurende te verwerven van die gunsten welke reeds zoo ruim aan hem bewezen zyn.

Visiteurs van Indie en Huisgezinnen, wonende in die nabyheid van Rondebosch, Wynberg, of waar ook maar een Omnibus of Postwagen passeert, hunnen insglyks voorzien werden met al hetgeen Zy nodig hebben – en, daar hy altyd aan de Hal tegenwoordig is om hunne Orders aan te nemen, kunnen zy op eene behoorlyke en spoedige bezorging staat maken.

ORDER AFGEGEVEN TEN ZEYNEN HUIZE AAN ZONNEBLOEM WORDEN EVEN ZOO UITGEVOERD ALS DIE WELKE AAN DE HAL WORDEN BESTELD.
The interior beckoned — diamonds at Kimberley in the 1870s and gold at the Witwatersrand in the 1880s. Many Morkels moved inland at this stage. Two sons of Willem Morkel and Esther Leonora Louw interests us – Pieter Loreth Morkel and Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1810 – 1859).

**Pieter Loreth Morkel**

e6 PIETER LORETH Morkel (1818 — 1878) married Petronella Wessels (1821 — 1905). They had six sons, and five daughters. Pieter was a butcher and businessman in Cape Town in the mid-1880s. He changed the spelling of his middle name from Loret to Loreth. His home *Zonnebloem* overlooked Woodstock and was a prominent feature on the road into the city. He is not mentioned in the history of the house\(^{129}\), but an advertisement\(^{130}\) placed in 1843, clearly states it as his residence.

His business expanded. In 1856 he was established at 41 Leeuwe Street and in a building opposite the Shambles where he was still operating. In 1870 he retired from business, but soon after started afresh as a butcher. However, in 1873 gave it up for a complete change of occupation. In 1875 he ran a boarding house in Strand Street and died in 1875. His widow carried on with the boarding house.

*Zonnebloem. Engraving by George French Angas ca 1847.*

*Victor de Kock. Ons Drie Eeuw, p82.*
Murder at Ratelrivier

Dirk Gysbert van Reenen van Breda was a brewer in Cape Town. After his first wife died, he married the 15-year old f2 Jacoba Alida Morkel, daughter of a wealthy butcher, e6 Pieter Lauret (sic) Morkel. In 1865, Dirk Gysbert was declared insolvent and his wealthy father appointed him manager of one of his many Overberg farms, Ratelrivier.

The farm was profitable and they lived well. But, despite all the wealth and gaiety, their’s was not a happy family. According to one of the daughters, her father cursed and swore often.

Things came to a head when Gysbert became jealous after Alida danced with another man at a party at their home. Things went from bad to worse and eight days later Gysbert shot his wife with a revolver. She died before a doctor could arrive. Legend has it that the dying Jacoba Alida van Breda (née Morkel) left a bloody handprint on the passage wall, which subsequent farm owners could not erase.

Dirk Gysbert scratched a window pane at Ratelrivier: ‘1861. Hard Year Can never be forgotten’. He was sentenced to five years’ imprisonment with hard labour. He was discharged on 4 May 1878, and stayed in Cape Town, dying destitute in 1901.
Sixth generation brothers \( f^4 \) Hendrik Johannes (H.J.) and \( f^6 \) Willem (Japie) Morkel were pioneers during the Johannesburg goldrush. H.J. had been an attorney and auctioneer in Kroonstad in the O.F.S. and was well suited as property developer in Ferreria’s Camp, one of the goldfields first townships. Japie Morkel was a butcher in Kimberley and joined his brother in the exciting new mining town.

NOT MUCH is known about their parents, \( e^2 \) Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1810 – 1859) and his wife Geertruida Anna Louw. They lived in Somerset West and had twelve children, of whom eight, four boys and four girls reached adulthood. We have information about three, \( f^4 \) H.J., \( f^5 \) Lammie (Lambertus) and \( f^6 \) Japie (Willem).

**H. J. Morkel**

WHEN THE first gold was discovered on the Witwatersrand and Ferreiras Camp sprang into being, \( f^4 \) H.J. (Hendrik Johannes 1842 – 1902) Morkel, married to Wilhelmina Moll, took a leading role\(^{132} \). He and approximately 100 other diggers presented the original petition dated 1 November 1886 to the Kruger Government protesting against the proposal to issue ‘preferential rights to stands’ limited to five years. According to Morkel’s petition such a short period ‘would be very harmful and would tend to stultify progress, for without reasonable security of tenure no buildings of any pretensions will be put up’.

Mainly as a result of his energy and thoughtfulness on this occasion Morkel became a very popular figure in the camp. In November 1886 he was elected member of the Witwatersrand Goldfields Committee, obtaining 74 votes. This was the third highest number polled among nine successful candidates. He was chosen to represent claim
holders on the farm Turffontein. H.J. was summoned to appear before Landdrost Carl von Brandis on November 17 and was sworn in. Despite these political and judicial preoccupations, H.J. found time that same eventful November 1886 to become Chairman of the first Cricket Club on the Goldfields.

The firm 'Morkel & du Toit, Commission Agents', was in business in October 1886. In that capacity they kept a list of all standholders in the original Ferreira's Camp, a special book, which unfortunately has been lost. On January 16, 1887, Morkel and du Toit officiated as auctioneers at a very important early sales of stands. The Paarl Syndicate (called after the town where it had been formed) had caused the township Paarl's Hoop to be laid out, on the farm Langlaagte. Morkel and du Toit continued in business for years, but du Toit eventually dropped out. In 1891 H. J. Morkel was an ‘Auctioneer, Forwarding and General Agent’. The name of his business place was changed to Morkel's Buildings in 1893, and in 1894 he moved to Mendelsohn's Buildings at 10 Joubert Street, where he remained till the time of the Anglo-Boer War. He was also a Government Appraiser. Over time he took in a partner, W. J. Morkel, who lived at Ophir Street, Ophirton. There was now also a third Justice of Peace in Johannesburg, namely J. Morkel at the corner of Peterson and Hof Streets. Together with Willem (Japie *1845) Morkel, the butcher, the Morkel family worked together, sharing the same Post Office Box number, 45, for many years.

The celebrated Hendrik Johannes Morkel passed away in 1902. He had been a director of the early Banket Junction Main Reef GMC and of Langlaagte Prospecting and GMC Ltd. He and his wife, Wilhelmina Jacoba Moll, had eleven children, four boys and seven girls, all born while they were living in Kroonstad, O.F.S. The story of the youngest, Somerset West Morkel, a successful maize farmer in northern Transvaal is told below.

**Somerset West Morkel**

*g12 SOMERSET WEST (S.W.)* Morkel born in 1864 was the youngest son of *f4* H.J. Morkel and W.J. Moll, and he was married to Susan Kruger. His remarkable achievements were told in The Countryman of August 1949.

S.W. started out as a subcontractor for the Railways. Later he was in two accidents doing sub-contracting in a goldmine and he lost sight in one eye and a piece of shrapnel lodged in the remaining eye. He was unable to continue on the mines and bought a farm on the Springbok Flats near Settlers in Transvaal. He called it Morgenster after the Morkel farm in Somerset West. Soon afterwards his eyesight in
the remaining eye began to fail and he had to sell the farm to pay for operations. He remained on the farm and through sharecropping, he was able to buy it back.

By concentrating on growing maize on the rich black soil he progressed, although slowed down temporarily by the 1903's depression. Over the years he bought additional farms adjoining or close by. He became one of the biggest maize producers in the Union (of South Africa) by sheer ability and hard work. In 1949 he had some 1,500 morgen (1 morgen = 0.857 hectare) of land under the plough, and had reaped up to 25,000 bags of mealies in a year. Somerset West Morkel believed in the three-furrow mould-board plough and oxen, rather than tractors which compacted the soil. After he retired, their son Colin took over.

**Japie Morkel**

SIXTH GENERATION  
*f6* Willem *1845* (Japie) was the sixth child and married Johanna Helena Maritz. He became a butcher by trade (perhaps he learned his trade from his uncle, Pieter Loreth Morkel of Zonnenbloem) and moved to Kimberley where their seven children were born.

*f6* Willem (Japie) Morkel 1845 - 1914, x Johanna Helena Maritz 1854 - 1918

*g1* Theunisina Christina Morkel 1874 - 1875 (Cape Town)

*g2* Hendrik Johannes (Harry) Morkel *1876.* (champion hurdler)

*g3* Gerardus Maritz (Gerrit) Morkel 1878 -1955 x Flora Fanny Matthews *1880

*g4* William Somerset (Sommie) Morkel 1879 - 1921 (rugby Springbok)

*g5* Stephanus Kimberley (Steve) Morkel *1881

*g6* Douglas Francis Theodore (Dougie) Morkel 1885 - 1950 (rugby Springbok)

*g7* John Vernon Bester Morkel *16.1.1890

The oldest son, *g1* Harry was a champion hurdler at Wanderers Club, Johannesburg, while Sommie and Dougie became rugby Springboks. The four oldest sons fought on the Boer side during the Anglo-Boer War.

Japie joined his brother H.J. in the fast growing goldfields of Johannesburg and opened the first butcher's shop in Ferreira's Camp. His shop was at the corner of Bree Street East and Marshall Square, and his home in Davies Street, Doornfontein, after that suburb was opened. Morkel's butchery was still in operation till the end of the century at the original address. The old gentleman himself gave up his house in Doornfontein in the nineties and went to Bok Street in Hospital Hill. He was appointed Justice of the Peace about 1893. However, according to the diary of a British Soldier, Japie's business had collapsed and his sons were fighting a losing battle for the Boers in the Anglo-Boer War that was raging at the time. These were tough times.
134

1 July 1901.
(Thursday) .. I met Harry Morkel, eldest son of the butcher. His brother Maritz — a good name — having I understand, broken his neutrality promise and again gone on commando (joined the Boer forces again against the British) has been expelled to Ladysmith — a desirable undesirable I call him, for I knew him, and liked him. Harry himself has been at the front with the third son Steve; these two have accepted the situation and settled down.

'Baby' Morkel, that very short fat sausage (Douglas by Christian name) has grown much and is quite different to look at.

Old father Morkel, his butcher shops in Marshall Square and Doornfontein both closed, is in low water — lives on some small rents.

There is also another son "Sonny" Morkel (Sommie) who is a prisoner of war in Ceylon, I think (he was sent to St Helena). This family is a fair sample of the present state of the Dutch.

There is a small Dutch boy working here, Frank Coetzee by name, who tells me his mother and grandfather are at the Boer camp at the racecourse. (The Turffontein concentration camp was established on the race course, known by that name). He, besides his wages here, gets 1/- (one shilling) per week from the relief fund, and so manages to hold his body and soul together.

Gerritt Maritz Morkel

JAPIE MORKEL’S third son g3 Gerhardus Maritz Morkel married Flora Matthews. They had four sons, h1 William Somerset Theodore Morkel, h3 Gerhardus (Gerrit) Maritz Morkel, h5 Lourens Morkel and h6 John Vernon Morkel, and two daughters, h2 Marie Gwendoline Morkel and h4 Johanna Helena Morkel.

h1 William Somerset Theodore Morkel married Johanna Botha and they had four children. The oldest boy, i1 Gerritt Maritz Morkel started his career as learner draughtsman at African Explosives and studied part time to achieve the Structural
Design Certificate (ATCII) at the Witwatersrand Technical College. He became interested in estimating and preparing budgets for major projects. He obtained a B.Com degree with a Finance focus, from the University of Witwatersrand, studying part time. He has worked as Project Control Manager on mining projects in South Africa and also Chile, Australia, Canada and the United States. Gerritt has researched the genealogy of his branch of the Morkel family and is co-author of this chapter.

![Photo: Gerrit tMorkel]

Thys, Marina, Stephan, Gerrit, Leoti, Petro, Theo (WST, father)
Philip Germand, Maria, Karla, Gerritt (snr), Theo (WST, son)

Willem Morkel

i3 WILLEM (FREDERICK William Christiaan) Morkel, brother of Gerritt, married Tersia Maria Kok on 12 December 1970 in Primrose, Gauteng. They eventually settled in Boksburg. They had two sons, j1 Johan Bruwer and j2 Christiaan Willem...
and a daughter j3 Karin. Willem started his career with a trade as fitter and turner and became involved in project management at Bateman Projects.

j1 Bruwer (Johan Bruwer) Morkel qualified with a degree in chemical engineering and is active as a business consultant with SAP. He is married to Anneldi Steyn. They live in Centurion Gauteng and have two daughters, k1 Danielle and k2 Karah.

j2 Tiaan (Christiaan Willem) Morkel studied industrial design and is a property developer in Bedfordview on the East Rand. He is married to Lucille de Wet with two children.

j3 Karin Morkel is group purchasing manager for a group of steel merchants.

Lou Morkel

i4 LOU (LOURENS) Morkel, brother of Gerritt, born in Rivonia Sandton and grew up in Primrose. He qualified in aircraft technology with South African Airways. His uncle, oom Bill (Gerhardus Maritz Morkel), known for breeding pigeons, was his instructor. With Zelda Lessing, second wife, they have two sons, Llewellyn and Leonard and two grandchildren. Lou is in business with his son, Leonard and daughter-in-law Maryna. The other son, Llewellyn is active with several business activities, specialising in computer applications on cell phones.

i4 Lourens Morkel *21.4.1947 x M. F. M. Engelbrecht + 1972
j1 William Somerset Theodoro *23.7.1907 x Johanna Cornelia Jacomina Botha * 14.1.1908
j2 Lourens Morkel *1971 11991
xx 9.4.1974 Zelda Naomi Lessing
j1 Llewellyn Morkel *9.7.1975 x Trudie Schenk
j2 Leonard Morkel *123.6.1978 x Maryna Elizabeth Van Wyk
k1 Reneshke Morkel *21.7.2003
k2 Nathan Morkel *21.7.2003
Bill, Dennis, Cathy and Jen Morkel

h3 BILL (GERHARDUS Maritz) Morkel of Malvern, born in 1914 was renowned in the business for breeding racing pigeons. His pigeons were cross-bred with those from another pioneer Frans Putterie and their pigeons became the standard in the industry. Bill and his brothers Willem and Vernon bought Malvern Pet Produce & Supply Store in Malvern. Cathy remembers playing in the seed bins when visiting the shop as a child. Bill died in a car accident on a fishing trip to Mocambique in 1969.

Bill married Theodora Ehlers and they had four children, three sons and a daughter. The oldest son Denny Dennis became an auditor and spent his last working years with Johannesburg Consolidated Investments (JCI). He married Elween van Niekerk, and accountant with JCI. They had two daughters, Cathy and Jen, plus and an adopted daughter Carol. They retired to Somerset West in 1995 and live in a Rome Glen Estate, built on the old Morkel farm. Cathy with a diploma in accounting works in financial services in Cape Town and has produced lovely photos associated with the Morkel family, including our cover photo of the dovecote at Die Bos.

Jen played hockey (field and indoor) at provincial level for Southern Transvaal Schools and Natal Under 21. She also played Waterpolo at school and seniors. Later she managed the Central Gauteng ladies team, and involved sister Cathy as chairlady of Ladies Waterpolo. Jen works with Dynamic visual Technologies as a project manager in change management on various contracts, including banking.
DESCENDANTS OF WILLEM MORKEL OF VOORBURG

g3 Gerhardus Maritz Morkel *23.6.1878 † Jul 1955 x Flora Fanny Matthews * 25.11.1880

h3 Gerhardus Maritz (Bill) Morkel * 21.7.1914 † 3.7.1969 x Theodora Ehlers * 10.10.1913 † 17.8.2005

i1 Dennis Maritz Morkel *10.8.1939 x Elween Magdalene van Niekerk *18.6.1939

j1 Catherine (Cathy) Elizabeth Morkel *23.11.1964
j2 Jennifer (Jen) Louise Morkel * 25.2.1970
j3 Carol Anne van Niekerk Morkel *2.2.1959 adopted 15.7.2013 x÷ Bruce Jurgens

k1 Bronson Jurgens
k2 Jared Jurgens

i2 Clifford Morkel *29.7.1940 † 3.2.2003

i3 Joan Morkel * 7.5.1946 x Stanley Sepp

j2 Derek Sepp *12.1.1973
j3 Grant Sepp 3.4.1974

i4 Desmond Morkel 13.8.1949 x Sheila Marion *13.8.1949

j1 David Morkel *7.10.1970 x÷ Janine Vanessa Archer

k1 Daniel Morkel 20.12.2004
k2 Samuel Morkel * 5.6.2006

j2 Belinda Morkel * 11.4.1974 x Wayne Michael Malan

k1 Kara Anne Malan 2.1.2001
k2 Emma Rose Malan * 5 Mar 2006
k3 Jack David Malan *16.11.2010

Gerritt and Cathy Morkel
f5 Lambertus (Lammie) Dirk Petrus Morkel 1844 – 1921 farmed maize and cattle on several farms in the Kroonstad/Steynsrus area in the Orange Free State from the late 1800’s before his death in 1921. His sons, g1 Hendrik Johannes, g4 Jacobus Gideon (Jim) and g5 Hardie Lambertus inherited and continued farming until the 1933 depression when the “Big Drought” forced them to throw in the towel and take jobs on the gold mines in Roodepoort.
Jim Morkel

ANOTHER TALL Morkel filling his boots at 6 feet 6 inches, g4 Jacobus (Jim) Gideon continued farming in the Steynsrus area until the 1933 depression. Then he took a job with Rand Leases Gold Mines in Roodepoort. Jim owned several arab horses and loved his great danes, one of which saved his life by literally ripping him away by the seat of his pants from a puffadder on strike. Although a warm hearted fellow, Jim was allegedly known for capable of ‘standing behind his fists’.

Custom for boxing champions touring South Africa was to invite anyone from the crowd to get into the ring after defeating their local opponents. After much prompting by his friends he got into the ring, but the fight was stopped after minutes of “mixing it up” since the visiting champion couldn’t cope with his speed and reach.

f5 Lambertus (Lammie) Dirk Petrus *12.1.1844 – 21.2.1921 x Maria Magdalena Louw
f1 Hendrik Johannes Morkel* 13.9. 1879
f2 Maria Sarah Magdalena Morkel*30.4.1882
f3Geetruida Anna Morkel*8.9.1883
f4 Jacobus (Jim) Gideon Morkel *30.8.1887 x Hendrika Christina Meintjes
h1 Stella Sybil Morkel * 3.12.1911 x William Knott
h2 Christina Johanna Morkel * 1914
h3 Hendrika Christina Morkel *30.8.1914 † 7.2.1996 x De Wet Tolmay
h4 Jacobus Gideon Morkel *17.4.1916 † 116.7.1987 (Carletonville) x Maria Elizabeth Visser
h5 Willel (Bill) Albertus Jacobus Morkel * 21.4.1919 – 22.6.1997 (Klerksdorp North West) x Dorothy (Dot) Kathleen Maas * 2.9.1920 – 3.2.2015
i1 Christine Heather Morkel *27.2.1941 x Charles Brown
i2 Jacobus (Jim) Gideon Morkel *13.9.1944 x Viviene Grafton Albon xx Jennifer McGee
j1 Kathryn Morkel *18.12.1966 x Colin McWilliams
j2 James David Morkel *26.6.1973 x Desiree Ross
j3 Douglas William Morkel *8.1.1975 x Elisabetha (Lisa) Magdalena Esterhuizen
i3 Hendrikus (Dricky) Willem Morkel * 21.8. 1946 Virginia Wilmot x Dorothy (Dot) Morkel *20.9.1971 x Carlos Faria
j1 Dricky Morkel *5.10.1973
i4 Willem Morkel *19.11 1947 x Magdalena Dorothea (Dot) Diamond
j1 Welma Morkel *18.4.1970 x Robert Vogel
j2 Wilhem (Wim) Albertus Morkel * 29.9.1971 x Melinda Uys
j3 Kathleen Morkel * 9.12.1972 x Lourens Vorster xxPhilip Cockrell
j4 Hannes Morkel * 22.2.1975 x Madelein van Wyngaardt
i5 Dorothy (Dot) Morkel* 21.2.1951 x Eric Butler
i6 Filippus (Fil) Morkel*18.1.1959 x Jacomina (Jacqui) Elizabeth Groeneveld
j1 Bill Morkel *18.2.1980 x Nadia Human
j2 Marique Morkel * 16.2.1983 x Gerald Paul Coertzen
h6 Maria Magdalena Morkel *1921 – 1925
h7 Debora Catharina Morkel *1927 x Greyling
g5 Hardie L.S. Morkel *25.12.1891
g6 Hester Leonora Morkel *2 .7.1893 x B. Stapleton
g7 Debora Helena Morkel *19.8.1896 x H. van Vuuren
**Bill Morkel**

WILLEM (BILL) Albertus Jacobus Morkel completed matric at Potchefstroom Volkskool where he met his wife to be, Dorothy Kathleen (Dot) Maas from Potchefstroom Girls High. He played rugby on the wing for Potch Volkies 1st team. After school Bill qualified as a mine surveyor at Rand Leases Gold Mines. His career was interrupted when he joined General Montgomery's Eighth Army as officer in WW2. His service included the Second Battle of El Alamein (23 October – 11 November 1942) in North Africa. Bill received several medals of honour. On his return Bill played lock for Rand Leases 1st team when Felix du Plessis (Springbok Captain) represented arch enemies, Diggers — they became good friends. He joined Stilfontein Gold Mine (then General Mining) where he served as pioneer mine captain and later safety engineer at Buffelsfontein Gold Mine until his retirement.

---

**Jim Morkel**

JACOBUS GIDEON (Jim) Morkel was born in 1944 in Roodepoort and schooled in Stilfontein and Potchefstroom. He started his career in mining and relocated to Port Elizabeth where he worked in the car industry for Ford and Illings. In Port Elizabeth he married his first wife, Vivienne and they had a daughter, Kathlyn. They were divorced after four years. Soon after that he met and married his second wife, Jenny. They have two sons, James and Douglas. In 1975 he started in the retail motorcar business in Paarl until 1984 when he entered full time ministry with the Assembly of God. He pastored a church in Bloemfontein and later in Rustenburg. He continues to serve on the national leadership of the Assembly of God Group in South Africa and together with Jenny, reside in Rustenburg.
Fil Morkel

Filippus (Fil) Morkel was born in Klerksdorp, North West. For most of his career he has been involved in commercial road freight, logistics and supply chain businesses at senior and board levels. He completed a B.Com (Hons) degree at Potchefstroom University and studied business at the Manchester Business School. He is logistics executive, Africa Division of Imperial Logistics in Johannesburg since 2013. He was married to Jacqui and they have a son, Bill and daughter, Marique. They were divorced in 2009.

Dot Morkel and her Children

Back: 6 Filippus (Fil) 1 Christine Heather, 5 Dorothy, 2 Jacobus Gideon (Jim)
Front: 4 Willem, Dorothy Kathleen (Dot, mother), 3 Hendrikus Willem.

i6 Fil, j3 Marique, j1 Bill and Jacqui Morkel
j2 James, i2 Jim and j3 Douglas Morkel
17 Arthur L. Rubidge Morkel

Extracted with permission from Rhodesia. Beginning to End by Ron Morkel

Ron Morkel who now lives in the U.S.A. has documented three generations of his family in Rhodesia, from the earliest days until, having fought terrorists for years, he left that tragic country shortly before Mugabe took over. Our extract is in three parts, commencing with pioneer Arthur Loreht Rubidge Morkel who, after an arduous journey of six months, arrived at Fort Salisbury in 1891 when Cecil John Rhodes was establishing the Colony.

Arthur’s Childhood

Rubidge Morkel left extensive memoirs of his life from which his grandson Ron could draw for his book. He was born in Graaff Reinet on May 14, 1871 to Peter Morkel and Sarah Rubidge. Sarah was the granddaughter of Commander Robert Rubidge, an officer in the British Royal Navy during the Napoleonic wars to whom Britain awarded land in the colonies for his valiant service. He settled in the Albany district near Graaff Reinet with the 1820 British settlers.

At the time of the Great Trek in the 1830s, Peter Morkel’s family moved from the Cape to the Eastern Cape. Peter was by all accounts an
enterprising man who followed impulsive ‘get rich’ ideas that never seemed to work out. Peter and Sarah eventually had seven children, two of whom died young. Peter took his family all over the country from one failed venture to the other. In some he succeeded, only to lose on the next. He finally landed a paying job as Landdrost (magistrate) in Zoutpansberg in the north of the Transvaal Republic.

His wife and children suffered in the process of frequent moves, lack of money and had to put up with Peter’s ill temper and constant drinking. By now Sarah had had enough. She left him and took her children on the long journey back to the Cape. They travelled by mule wagon back to Pretoria and with other wagons further south. Their money ran out and Arthur, then twelve years old, got a job packing tobacco to help out. They eventually reached Colesberg where Sarah stayed with family while Arthur took the train to Graaff Reinet where he stayed with an uncle, Walter Murray. Sarah’s extended family of Rubidges, Southeys and Murrays repeatedly provided refuge on their farms for her and the children.

While remaining loyal to his father, Arthur remembered his relatives from his mother’s side with fondness and deep appreciation. His cousin, Graham Southey, a few years older than Arthur, became a friend for life and related his experiences at St Andrew’s College in Grahamstown. It became a tradition within Arthur’s family to send their sons to St Andrew’s. Graham also took Arthur hunting for small game and introduced him to guns and coping in the bush. Uncle Walter Murray had wonderful stories of hunting in the hinterland and initiated Arthur into bush craft, such as reading the spoors of lion and other animals. Above all, these relatives provided not only shelter but warmth and love. It was not surprising that Arthur came to identify more with his mother’s side of the family and the British in South Africa than with the Morkels and the Afrikaners and Boers.

Arthur was sent to the Southey family in Ceres in the Western Cape. He went by mule wagon from the farm of George Southey to the Nelspoort station and then by train to the closest siding to Ceres, about ten miles away through the mountains. From there he walked to Ceres and was warmly greeted by his grandmother. All his life he fondly remembered his time at Ceres and the beautiful setting in a valley in the mountains.
Arthur had dreams of trekking into Africa's darkest interior, but as a first step accepted a job as apprentice farmer with Charles Southey in the Middelburg district where he cared for ostriches. His uncle was known for his laziness and love of brandy and Arthur returned to Ceres and his education. He continued to dream of adventuring north and spent his spare time reading about traveling to the interior of Africa.

**Going North**

WHEN HE was sixteen, an elderly woman in Ceres gave him enough money to travel to Johannesburg, where, because of gold mining, he hoped good jobs would be available. The train went as far as Kimberley, where he signed up with a transport rider carrying heavy mining machinery to Klerksdorp. Heavy rains made the roads a quagmire and Arthur worked tirelessly with the transport rider to drive the oxen through the mud. He walked from Klerksdorp to Johannesburg and found a glut of workers competing for few jobs. He was keen to work and he was employed by a sympathetic businessman as driver of the family's horse carriages. He took on extra work where he could and eventually landed a better paying job as storekeeper, compound manager and office clerk on the Jompers Mine. Once a week he had to accompany the mine captain down the mine to record measurements of shafts, drives, rises and stopes. This experience would prove invaluable in later years when he pegged his own gold mines in Rhodesia.

Arthur was eighteen when Cecil John Rhodes received the charter from Queen Victoria to explore and colonize the land beyond the Limpopo River. Rhodes was recruiting men for his pioneers and Arthur applied. He was disappointed when turned down as too young and it steeled his determination to do it on his own, if he must. With money they had saved, Arthur and his relative, Gilmour Southey convinced a Mr. Hubert Davies to complete the financing of a wagon that would take them to the lands to the north.
He writes in his memoirs:

‘Our outfit consisted of eight donkeys, harness and wagon (a four wheeler, usually known as a ‘horse wagon’ and the sort which Boer families rode in when attending their Nachtmaal celebration). For provisions we had boer meal, rice, tea and coffee, sugar, tinned meats, a bag of salt, a large lump of lead and other odds and ends. This was not a great assortment but enough for two of us to last a year. We packed most of these under the seats of our wagon and had our beds made up on top of the lot. We were very comfortable.’

The modern road from Johannesburg to Salisbury is about 600 miles (ca 1,000km). In those days it was much longer, because they had to go via Bechuanaland and skirt Lobengula’s domain. The journey was harrowing and took six months. There were copious rains which provided water and fodder for the donkeys, but they had to wait weeks for swollen rivers to subside. The mud made it heavy going for the donkeys, and they were overtaken by ox wagons. It was wild country with dangerous animals and hostile black tribes, but the worst of all were hordes of mosquitos. Both Arthur and Gilmour contracted malaria and at one stage they feared for Arthur’s life. Weeks went by recuperating from the fever. At one river crossing the wagon got stuck in the sand. Gilmour was weak with fever and Arthur carried him across to a shady spot under a tree. He then unloaded the wagon so that it could be pulled across the river. Arthur carried a heavy 200lb (ca 90kg) bag of boer meal and stumbled. He was exhausted and the weight of the bag thrust his face into the sand. With almost superhuman effort he managed to work his way out but he nearly suffocated.

On July 29, 1891 the bedraggled pair arrived at Fort Salisbury (Harare) in Mashonaland. Their seven tired donkeys slowly pulled the wagon, which was worse for wear. Their boots were worn through and their clothes tattered and torn. Medicines had run out and supplies were low. They were dirty, unshaven, tired, weak with fever and a pitiful sight. However, they had made it and in Arthur’s memoirs there is never a hint of complaint. They were true pioneers in Rhodesia.
Arthur wrote:

‘Salisbury in those days was mostly a collection of badly built huts. The population was as rough as you could find in any outlying post of civilization. The only women in the town were ‘The Countess’ and Mrs Johan Colenbrander.’

They were fond of their donkeys but they needed money for medicines, hospital expenses and food. They parted with the animals two at a time. Arthur was suffering badly from malaria and spent time in the primitive hospital. Just before he left, Mother Patrick and her nurses arrived and overnight the atmosphere in the so-called hospital improved dramatically. The place was now clean, they had better food and the care was a great improvement.

He had been in hospital for a couple of weeks and was ready to go prospecting for gold. He could draw on his experience in the Johannesburg gold mine. Legends going back to biblical times abounded of fabulous mines in the lands of Ophir and Monomotapa, producing gold that was transported by Arab traders. Arthur spent weeks in the bush contending with tsetse flies by day and mosquitoes by night but, apart from traces, did not discover any promising gold deposits.

There was an acute shortage of food in Salisbury since almost no-one was growing and producing crops. It was transported by wagon from Transvaal. Arthur and Gilmour approached Leander Starr Jameson, Cecil Rhodes’ Administrator of Mashonaland and Frederick Courteney Selous, commander of the BSA Company troops, and obtained permission to peg a small farm on the east side of Fort Salisbury.
Gilmour pegged the farm Gletwyn, named after the family farm near Grahamstown. Arthur pegged the adjacent land and called it Glenlorne. They received a span of untrained oxen, six months of provisions and a plough from Mr Selous and Dr Jamieson. They made yokes out of local woods and rieme out of the game they shot. The vegetable garden was a great success and they kept the mess and canteen supplied as well as hawking the surplus on the streets.

**Back and forth**

ARTHUR HAD recurring bouts of malaria and Dr Jameson suggested — really commanded — that he return to Johannesburg. Arthur did not have the strength to walk the distance and together with a friend Jack Wightman, tried to sell his two remaining donkeys. They were unsuccessful but that evening Jack played billiards at the new hotel on Pioneer street and won £15, which he gave Arthur for his journey. Arthur could only give him the donkeys and much thanks for being a good friend.

He signed on with a transport rider named Terblanche and reached Pretoria 48 days later. He walked the 36 miles to Johannesburg and stayed with friends. He obtained a job at an Electric Light Works but it was too strenuous. He then took an office job, first with a gold mining company and then with Mr. L.E.B. Homan, a well-known sportsman and speculator. He was Homan’s private secretary in charge of correspondence and record keeping.

There was resentment and tension between Boer and Brit in the Transvaal. The Boers had trekked to the interior to get away from the British and now found that they (English and other Europeans) came in their thousands to the goldfields of Johannesburg. They were the Uitlanders (lit. outlanders or foreigners). The Uitlanders had limited rights under President Paul Kruger and they formed a ‘Reform Committee’ to campaign for recognition and representation.

Arthur joined the Reform Committee and with his horse and bicycle trained as a scout for the Uitlanders. At this time, in 1895 Arthur married Alice Southey, sister of Gilmour Southey, who was his partner in their first venture to Mashonaland. While Arthur trained with the Reform committee, Alice stayed with her family who were also living in Johannesburg.

News came that Dr. Jameson, with a band of five hundred troops, had come down from Mashonaland to help the Uitlanders take over Transvaal from the Boers. They had reached Mafeking and were marching towards Johannesburg. On his scouting trip Arthur came across a party of Boers who told him that Dr. Jameson and his troops had surrendered and was being escorted to Johannesburg. He mounted his
bicycle back to Johannesburg and reported the news to Captain Gilfillan and Colonel Rhodes (Cecil’s brother). The intended insurgency was over.

The Boers treated the humiliated Uitlanders, including Arthur, as second-class citizens. Arthur saw an opportunity to be a transport rider trekking food to Rhodes’ troops in Matabeleland. He approached his boss, Mr. Homan, who agreed to finance his trip. The year was 1896, at the height of the Matabele and Shona rebellions. Arthur got ten wagons, a hundred horses, a hundred and forty pack mules, all loaded with boer meal, bully beef and other supplies, set off for Bulawayo. It was a very successful and profitable expedition. When they arrived at Fort Tuli a large contingent of soldiers, the 7th Hussars, bought all their supplies and even some of their horses, paying good prices. On his way back he heard that his wife Alice was ill. He delegated bringing the remaining wagons back and hurriedly walked to Johannesburg, covering more than 100 miles in three days. He saw his wife recovered before venturing out again.

Based on the success of the first trip, Mr. Homan financed another one, on even a larger scale. They bought thirty wagons, 280 mules, 160 donkeys and some spans of oxen. They had a contract to deliver 1,000 bags of mealies and other supplies to Rhodes’ troops in Bulawayo. Arthur bought a bicycle so he could ride back and forth to keep in touch with this huge convoy. A devastating outbreak of rinderpest, a tick-borne disease, decimated cattle herds throughout Matabeleland and all his oxen died. He was saved by having donkeys and mules to continue. At Bulawayo he was able to sell his supplies at very good prices. Arthur was weak and ill and was in the Bulawayo hospital for weeks. He placed the return journey in the hands of others who had
accompanied him. He was keen to return to report back to Mr. Homan. The railway line by now had reached Mochudi and as soon as he could, Arthur took the Zeederberg coach from Bulawayo to the railhead.

Arthur writes about his journey.

‘I got back to my home in the Rand in November 1896. I had experienced the awful coach journey from Bulawayo to Mochudi where the rails from the south had reached. The coach proprietor, Mr. Doel Zeederberg, did all he could to make things comfortable, but unfed mules, tired drivers and leaders, wretched provisions, traveling night and day, cooped up in a coach full of passengers of various states of cleanliness, manners and habits, all conduced to one of the worst journeys I had ever undertaken and after six days and nights of this torment it was a great relief to board what would today be considered a most uncomfortable railway carriage.’

Arthur then rode the 200 miles by bicycle from Mafeking to Johannesburg to rejoin his family, to recuperate and to regain his strength. Soon he felt better and he became restless again. Opportunities for mining and farming in Mashonaland beckoned and he could sense that a second war, between the Boers and the British was inevitable.

In April 1897, Arthur and Alice set out from Johannesburg for Mashonaland with all their possessions. (The Anglo–Boer War broke out two years later, laying much of Transvaal to waste). Alice’s brother Gilmour, now married, came in a second wagon and they were joined by Alice’s younger brother Jack, and Mr. Claude Southey. He acquired two wagons, thirty-six mules, three horses, thirty bicycles and spare parts, thirty bags of flour and other provisions for the journey. In a little four wheeled horse cart Arthur and Alice set out on a ‘most enjoyable journey with good weather and no human illnesses’. However, a serious outbreak of horse sickness killed the horses and two of the thirty-six mules. They had to leave one of the wagons behind at Enkeldoorn. Arthur later went back to collect the wagon and their belongings. Mr. Homan’s influence secured a job for Arthur working a farm for Mr. Grey.

**Mining and farming**

ALTHOUGH ARTHUR’S passion was agriculture, he realized that life would be a struggle if they had to rely on farming alone. They eked out a living on a farm they called Avondale close to Salisbury. Arthur started exploring for gold and he combined mining with farming for the remainder of his life.
He returned to Johannesburg to organise financing and formed a syndicate to explore for and acquire gold mining prospects. His first mine, Wiltshire, was unsuccessful in spite of his efforts and they had to abandon the venture. He then acquired the Joker mine which was rich with gold and provided income for most of his life as well as funding for the farm.

His memoirs tell of how hard it was and how he transported heavy bags of ore or bags of gold hanging from the handlebars of his bicycle, or from the saddle of his faithful, but skittish horse Tommy. Weighed down with his heavy cargo he had precarious crossings of flooded rivers and came close to losing the gold and even his life on more than one occasion. Later he was able to afford trucks and cars to make the journeys in better comfort.

He petitioned Rhodes to make more land available for agriculture, which eventually happened. He acquired prime land near present day Shamva and named his farm Ceres after the goddess of the harvest and his fond memories of the town of his youth. Money from the Joker mine made it possible to develop the property into a magnificent farm over the years. For irrigation he dammed the Umvinzi river. With a workforce, using picks and shovels, he constructed a ten mile long canal with a half a mile long tunnel through a ridge to deliver copious water to the most fertile soils on the property. Arthur’s experience and knowledge of mining was vital to the project which took years to build. But when completed, it yielded ten cubic feet of water per second for irrigation. He continued to improve the irrigation system all his life. Arthur and later his sons and descendants cultivated cotton, maize, soybeans, tobacco, winter wheat and other crops and also a produce from a large vegetable garden for the African townships around Salisbury. Eventually the farm also supported cattle and other livestock as well as a crocodile farm and a game ranch.
Arthur continued to prospect for gold and found a good deposit along the Mazoe River close to the border of Mocambique. He established the Fungwe mine and operated it for many years.

Arthur and Alice had six children, Rhoda, Reginald, Vincent, Cecil, Clifford and Ernest, who died tragically of a gunshot.

Arthur was a leader in the community. He was active in the politics of farming and became Chairman of the Shamva Farmer's Association, the Grain Marketing Board, the National Farmer's Association, the Agricultural Union and other boards. His farm provided employment for generations of Shona and Nyasa with housing, schooling and a medical clinic. At their comfortable and well appointed home with swimming pool and tennis court, Arthur and Alice were central to their large extended family and friends. At their home they hosted Cecil John Rhodes and the fabled big game hunter Selous on their visits. Arthur hunted all over Southern Africa and the Mazoe Valley, mostly around his mines. It was always for food.

On September 14, 1931, Alice passed away. Arthur chose a peaceful place within walking distance of the homestead for her final resting place. It became the Morkel family cemetery. Life was never the same after the passing of Alice, but he kept active with his mining and farming ventures until the day he died in July 1937, when his family buried him alongside his beloved Alice.

The eldest son Reg became the patriarch, owner and custodian of the family estate. For a time brother Cecil worked the section of Ceres Farm known as Bamboo Creek. Reg and his wife Doodie had three sons, John, Rex and David who all farmed Ceres and Bamboo Creek and with hard work and financial resources, added to the farms. When Reg died, his son Rex took up the baton as Ceres Farm patriarch. Rex and his wife Trish had four children, Alan, Diana, Brian and Keith who continued to work the farm.
18 Clifford Earle Southey Morkel

Extracted with permission from *Rhodesia. Beginning to End.*
by Ron Morkel

When his Cliff was born in December of 1910 as their sixth child, Arthur and Alice were living on their farm *Avondale*, five miles north of the Fort Salisbury Kopje. Arthur was away a great deal of the time, developing *Ceres* Farm. He was hardworking and not sensitive towards his five boys, but he provided them with opportunities to enjoy a more comfortable life than his own had been.

ARTHUR HAD an outwardly stoic nature but possessed a heart of gold and was dedicated to his family. Alice was a loving mother who always made time to comfort the children. In 1920, at ten years of age, Clifford began making the ten-day railway journey to Grahamstown to St Andrews Prep, and later the College. He was happy at the school and matriculated in 1927.

Cliff was keen to become a farmer and worked on *Ceres* to learn the ropes. His father, however, needed someone reliable to look after his Fungwe gold mine. Cliff felt condemned to isolation in a place as close to hell as you can get. He did not try to dissuade his father. Arthur’s wish was his command. He stayed at the mine for five long years.
He was the only white person in this part of the hot, cruel, inhospitable Mazoe-Zambezi Valley. Tsetse flies tormented him during the day and malarial mosquitoes attacked at night. In the still waters and ponds of the river lived the deadly *bilharzia* parasite. The heat and dust made life miserable. He was able to cool off in a part of the river where the water was flowing actively where there would be no snails and thus no *bilharzia*. Cliff worked hard and with a sense of purpose answering no one but his sense of duty.

**The second World War**

ARTHUR DIED in 1937 and Cliff stayed on at *Fungwe*. War was imminent in Europe and Britain was actively preparing for war. They requested the colonies to train a volunteer army to protect British interests. It was exciting times and many young men were signing up for military duty. For Cliff it was an opportunity to get away from *Fungwe*.

His brother Greg agreed to look after the *Fungwe* mine and Cliff set off for the recruiting office in Salisbury. He joined the signals corps and became an expert in Morse code with the rank of Sergeant. Cliff’s brother Cecil also joined the Army with the Rhodesia African Rifles (RAR), a battalion of African soldiers overseen by white officers. Reg Morkel continued to manage *Ceres* Farm, one of the most productive farms in Southern Rhodesia. He was asked to stay on the farm to produce crops for food for the soldiers.

Cliff belonged to the Royal Rhodesia Regiment Company’s Armoured Car Section and became their main signalman. They travelled by convoy through Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland to Nairobi in Kenya. His brother Cecil had been there for some time already and through him, Cliff became acquainted with a young woman, Sheila Norman, in the officer’s mess. Despite a twelve-year age difference, there was a spark between them.

A few weeks went by and Cliff’s company moved to the war zone. They moved into the North African part of Abyssinia (Ethiopia), occupied by Italian forces. The
convoy drove slowly through the countryside without encountering any resistance. The Italians avoided confrontation. In the desert north of Nairobi, Cliff began to suffer from excruciating pain in his stomach. They diagnosed a ruptured appendix but were hundreds of miles away from Nairobi. A medic who had been in an operating theatre but with no experience did the operation and afterwards, Cliff found himself bouncing in the back of a Land Rover for a three day trip back to Nairobi, in terrible pain. The surgeon told him that the medic had done a poor job, but saved his life. He was pumped full of anti-biotics and he slowly recovered. His entry scar was round and bigger than a golf ball.

Sheila found out from Cecil that Cliff was in the hospital and she visited him daily until he was shipped out via Mombasa to Durban, and from there to Bulawayo. He was given light duties in the signals room while recuperating. He and Sheila carried on an intense love affair by correspondence and decided to get married. In 1941 they married and they rented a home in Bulawayo. On 12 September 1942 their daughter Cynthia was born.

**Cattle Ranching**

THE BRITISH Foreign Office launched a program to help returning soldiers to start a new life. Cliff, like many Rhodesian soldiers from agricultural backgrounds wanted to farm. The choice was between growing tobacco or cattle ranching. Cliff chose ranching.

He took jobs at Matopos Research Station. and *Liebig’s Ranch* near Shabani and gained valuable hands-on cattle ranching experience.

A huge ranch, *Rhodesdale Estate* in the Midlands of Rhodesia was purchased by the Government and subdivided into viable units for returning soldiers. Cliff travelled to Que Que and met up with Robin Tulloch who had measured up the estate and was a valuable source of information and advice. They drove around for two days and finally drove through the great Dyke at the Vrede gap and the land opened up across a huge *vlei*...
with a stream, watering hole and grasslands dotted with flat topped acacia thorn trees. Fresh grazing from good rains had drawn countless herds of wild game. Cliff stood awestruck. A herd of sleek sable antelope stood alert at the approach of the car. There were zebra and impala in abundance and a herd of tsessebe in the distance. The arrangement was that the Government would provide the land and some assistance for the rancher to get started, and after some years the farmer could purchase the property.

They named their farm Mazuri Ranch after Swahili (m’zuri) meaning ‘very good’ or ‘extremely pleasant’. He bought a Studebaker truck and went back to Ceres Farm for their belongings. As part of his inheritance he received the cattle herd of Ceres while brother Reg concentrated on crop farming.

There was much to do. The two rivers on the ranch had to be dammed, roads built, a trough to dip cattle, and fencing had to be installed. A borehole was sunk for clean water for domestic use and a house was built. Cliff was ready for the challenge. For Sheila the reality of the ranch’s isolation started to set in. She had left Nairobi where she was a carefree and pampered girl enjoying an active social life with friends of her own age. Now she had come to settle in a far-off and wild foreign land with no friends, eight rough and dusty miles from the closest neighbour and forty miles to the nearest town.

Cliff was heroic and with the aid of local black workers, transformed the ranch dramatically in about six months. The house was still very primitive with only a living room and two bedrooms. The kitchen was outside under a shelter and the latrine an outside ‘long drop’. Cliff cherished the wild life on the farm and took care to husband both cattle and wild life. He hunted only as necessary and never for sport. He was proud that when he finally retired, the wild life was as prolific as when he started. The sable antelope were special and never hunted. They valued not only the magnificent larger game, but also small animals and particularly the amazing variety of birds on the property.
Ronald Norman Morkel

Extracted with permission from *Rhodesia. Beginning to End.*
by Ron Morkel

Ron was born on January 5, 1946. His father, Cliff, was at that time in the process of securing his new ranch in Que Que when he heard that Ron, one month old, was very ill and had died in hospital. He rushed back to find to his relief that the child was alive. Ron remained a weak and sickly child until his teens. But later he endured a tough life fighting terrorists and running a large cattle ranch.

CLIFF CONTINUED to improve the ranch and living conditions. By 1949 the kitchen and bathrooms had been added with piped water and flush toilets. They still lacked electricity and used pressurized kerosene lamps. Cliff constructed a cool room with water dripping over charcoal embedded in mesh.

On September 13, 1949 their third child, Tony was born in the Que Que hospital. About six weeks after the birth Sheila flew to Nairobi with Tony. She realized that she never wanted to return and a few weeks later Tony was put on a plane in the charge of an air hostess and flown back to Salisbury. They agreed to divorce and Cliff looked after Ron and Tony while Cynthia went to live with Sheila in Nairobi. Baby Tony
was initially looked after by Joy Glenny from the neighbouring Wanganui Ranch, until he was about three years old. Ron could not remember any arguments or acrimony. Cliff never said a disparaging word about Sheila.

More sections of the Rhodesdale Estate were cut up and Cliff was allocated land along the Sebakwe River, suitable for crops. His neighbour, Guy Savory on Moreena Ranch also received adjoining land at Sebakwe. They agreed to swap and consolidate. Savory preferred crop farming and had the consolidated property along the Sebakwe River, while Cliff now owned both Mazuri and Moreena Ranches — a total of about 28,642 contiguous acres.

One afternoon a person was striding up the road to their house, carrying an empty petrol can. He had run out of fuel and asked for help. John Guinness was a decent man who had fallen on hard times, unsuccessfully seeking his fortune on the chromite mines of the great Dyke. Cliff loaded him and the petrol in his car and drove to the mine where John’s wife Joyce and their children were staying in a one roomed mud hut. After listening to their story, Cliff had sized them up and invited them back to Mazuri Ranch. They stayed for three years. Joyce brought a woman’s touch to the home which exuded laughter, warmth and happiness. John helped out and went into business with Cliff transporting chromite ore from the mines to the railway station and later to the smelting plant in Que Que.

**St Andrews and Mazuri Ranch**

WHEN RON was nine years of age in 1955, Cliff drove him 1,200 miles to Grahamstown and enrolled him in the Prep School of St Andrew’s College. He spent the next ten years at St Andrew’s travelling by train back to Mazuri for vacations. It was a happy and productive time for Ron. He made many good friends and learned from the dedicated and caring teaching staff. Sport formed a big part of his activities at the School. He played tennis, rugby, and cricket and participated in athletics and swimming events. Although he was small and suffered from respiratory issues, his health improved over the years, under the solicitous care of the staff at the school.

In his sixteenth year Ron had the opportunity to go on a hunting safari on a large cattle ranch. He was allowed to drive to the ranch with two friends and workers from Mazuri Ranch. They had a successful stay and his friend shot a large

========

*His prophetic words were that ‘One day we are all going to have to leave with nothing but what is in our pockets’.*

========
kudu. They grilled impala fillets and made biltong and drove back to Mazuri where they found Cliff in a quandary. Ron’s brother Tony and James had found themselves in the way of a charging hippo and they had fired a shot into his mouth in self protection. Two days later the hippo’s carcass was floating in the dam. Hippo was protected game and they could be in serious trouble with the police. Cliff felt he had to do the right thing to call the police, but that could see his son go to jail. After much deliberation, Cliff and some of his trusted workers sliced up the hippo and dumped it into a well. It remained a family secret that has only been revealed in Ron’s book.

Back on Mazuri Ranch and as the oldest son, he wanted to take up farming and relieve his father of some of the duties on the Ranch. Their old friend and neighbour, Robin Tulloch encouraged his own sons to go to university and accept that they would not follow him into farming. His prophetic words were that ‘One day we are all going to have to leave with nothing but what is in our pockets’. His sons went on to careers in medicine and business. In spite of Robin’s warning, Ron decided to be a rancher and farm Mazuri Ranch. Cliff organised a job with a top cattle breeder for Ron to broaden his knowledge and experience. Later, life on the Ranch was pleasant, but Cliff made sure that Ron worked hard and diligently.

Ron met an Irish nurse, Brigid and there was mutual attraction. She came out to Mazuri Ranch and they had ten days together before she flew back to England because her contract had expired. Brigid returned to Africa as a nurse at Groote Schuur Hospital in Cape Town. They met up again and were married in the Salisbury Catholic Cathedral with a wedding reception on Ceres Farm.

At the end of his life, Cliff farewelled Ron and then travelled to see Tony and his new wife Alida in Salisbury. He died peacefully after showing Tony where the family started out at Avondale in Rhodesia. Cliff was buried in the family cemetery on Ceres Farm, next to his parents. A week later Ron and Brigid’s baby, Sarah Jane was born on the 4th of September 1971. Ron borrowed money to pay out Cynthia and Tony and he was now owner of Mazuri Ranch.
Brigid settled well into Mazuri Ranch and brought a woman’s touch to the house and the garden. She taught the women on the ranch to cut cloth and sew dresses and clothing and also knitting. As a qualified nurse she attended to minor burns and abrasions and sent patients to the hospital for more serious medical care. Word got around and soon she was attending neighbours’ staff as well. She looked into starting a clinic for the local people as the closest hospital was forty miles away. However, to her frustration, there were so many barriers imposed by local government that the idea was abandoned. On September 24, 1974, Brigid gave birth to their second child, Patrick.

Ron kept busy with cattle ranching and was in the saddle on his horse Petite for much of the day. Apart from the regular routines, they had to guard against tick-borne and other disease, as well as poisonous flowers that appeared in spring. There were leopards in the rough hills of the Great Dyke that had to be culled when they attacked the young calves but Ron was keen to carry on his father’s tradition of preserving the wildlife on the Ranch.

He became involved in the Intensive Conservation Association to preserve the environment and discourage bad farming practices. In one case a fly-over spotted badly degraded land and he had to visit his father’s old friend, Robin Tulloch. Robin took him to the area and it was clear that the land was not damaged by Robin’s farming but by strip mining for chromite ore, leaving no vegetation and exposing infertile subsoil. Miners were causing problems degrading the soil and causing pollution of the rivers and serious soil erosion. The mine workers left farm gates open, poached wildlife and with inadequate sanitation, spread tapeworm and other diseases among the livestock and humans.

In general, farmers hated sharing their land with miners, but Ron remembered his father Cliff, who viewed them as an evil which one could not get rid of. He decided to profit from the miners by selling supplies to them. It turned out a very lucrative income for many years. He supplied firewood from dead trees lying around the ranch. His workers on the ranch cut hardwood trees to size for mine props and other mining
timber. He built a store on the main Ngezi Dam road where he sold groceries such as sugar, tea, food as well as blankets, clothes and bicycles. Later he added beer and liquor, and a butcher shop using culled cows from the ranch. All these projects were possible because of the Windsor Chrome Mines and were more profitable than cattle ranching.

**War on Terrorists**

FROM THE mid nineteen sixties, Rhodesia was inexorably and progressively drawn into a war. Britain was keen to hand over her colonies to the local population and the rest of the World was actively hostile against the whites in Rhodesia. The war on terrorism had started and escalated year after year. Communist terrorists led by Nkomo came in from Zambia to the north, supported by Russians, while those led by Mugabe supported by the Chinese attacked from Mocambique. Initially, young men on reaching eighteen were called up and sent to Llewellyn Barracks just outside Bulawayo, for a four-and-a-half month boot camp. The local drill hall was in Gwelo and Ron, who was called up in March 1965, was assigned to 10RR (Royal Rhodesian Regiment 10th Battalion) for fourteen years.

Boot camp was a harrowing experience. The instructors were ex-British army soldiers who had volunteered to drill and toughen up a bunch of kids from all walks of life to look and think like mind-numbed robots ready to obey every order. The recruits learned to conduct their lives with meticulous detail to hygiene and cleanliness including immaculate barracks,
perfectly ironed uniforms, polished brass and boots, all accomplished in the few precious hours that they were not marched around the parade ground by loud mouthed drill sergeants. In weapons training they learned the workings of the SLRs (self loading rifles) so well that they could assemble them in the dark. Ron qualified as a marksman and then moved on to Bren ‘light machine guns’. They were heavy to carry but very accurate. Ron scored so well at target practice with the Bren that he became known as ‘Machine Gunner Morkel’, and was doomed to lug the heavy gun and bullets in the heat and dust for the rest of his service in the army. He tried several times to be relieved of the burden, but the Bren was assigned to him every time.

In 1965, the war had barely started and civilians were initially called up for a two week camp once a year. As the war progressed, they had to leave their homes and farms for longer and longer periods. It was a month a year, then six weeks, then six weeks twice a year and in 1977 and 1978 it was six weeks on six weeks off. It was particularly demoralising to complete a mission and be told to do an extra week or two — which always came off the time supposed to be at home.

It was even more demoralising to leave wives and children unprotected at home and go into the sweltering and rugged valleys and bushland to fight against an enemy whom they could not tell from the local inhabitants. During the day the terrorists blended in with the locals so that they would appear to be happy rural people going about their daily routines. All the while they were watching troop movements and look for opportunities to kill. At night they would lay land mines and otherwise inflict as much hardship, destruction and death as they could. The terrorists rarely picked a fight with the soldiers. They concentrated on brutalising and killing civilians, particularly the blacks which had a far greater impact, and was easier to do than fighting soldiers. Raping women and young girls was used by Mugabe’s fighters as a
method of intimidation and control and they have continued with this in modern Zimbabwe. The international media were virulently hostile to the Rhodesian whites and ignored the atrocities perpetrated by the terrorists.

Ron describes how their commanding officers lacked Rhodesian background and understanding of the languages and customs of the local tribes and their actions and insensitivities often alienated innocent locals going about their daily lives. While they did not see much active combat, they were constantly on patrol in inhospitable bush country in the dust and heat and pestered by mopane and tsetse flies and other insects by day and mosquitoes by night. This went on for years. On one occasion they were camped on a tabletop hill which happened to be the mating place for stinkbugs. As the evening cooled down, the grayish-brown beetles emerged from every crevice and covered their bodies as bees cover an apiarist. They plugged their ears and nostrils with toilet paper to keep them from crawling inside. They scooped them by the handfuls from their sleeping bags. When they batted them away and killed them, they emitted a putrid odour. Nothing seemed effective against them. They tried to light a fire, but the light only attracted more of them. At dawn they crept back into the cracks and shelters between the rocks and vegetation. The next night was not as bad and within a few days their season seemed to be over.

**Game ranch**

INSPIRED BY the example and teachings of their father Cliff, Ron and Tony saw themselves as custodians of wildlife on Mazuri Ranch. They valued the kudu, impala, zebra and especially treasured the beautiful sable antelope herd. The great variety of birds added to the wonder of their lives in this special part of Africa. In discussion with neighbours, it became clear that carefully controlled hunting could provide welcome additional income for the family. Individually they could not sustain a safari hunting business, but as a group of ranchers they had a delicate but valuable resource.

The first visitor was a friend of a friend from South Africa whom Ron allowed to shoot a lone kudu bull at an agreed price. They teamed up with the Tolmay’s who started *International Sportsman’s Adventures (SA)* and had small hunting groups come to the ranch, primarily from the US. They enjoyed their visitors and Brigid excelled as a
perfect host. She found them interesting because they brought life from outside to the lonely cattle ranch with a refreshing change in conversation from the usual farming, war and politics. For the hunters their stay surpassed their wildest dreams and they went home with treasured trophies. On one occasion a group of muzzle loader hunters visited. With their old style guns, they needed to approach the game closer than usual and Ron enjoyed shooting with the kind of guns his grandfather Arthur used when he settled in Rhodesia in 1891.

Cliff had a great love and interest in birds and this rubbed off on Ron. They built an enormous aviary on the ranch, filled with many local species. Bill, one of the guests, collected birds and Ron enjoyed his stay immensely, talking about birds and their habits. They collected and skinned and mounted selected specimens. Bill and Ron travelled to Salisbury where they met Terrence Coffin Grey who ran a museum and a taxidermy business. He was generous with his advice and this experience proved valuable in later years when Ron became a professional taxidermist after emigrating to the US.

**Leaving Rhodesia**

BRIGID SPENT years trying to convince Ron that they should start again in a new country where there would be a future for their family. By 1978 it became clear that she was right and they had to emigrate. By this time Ron had spent years fighting a war he believed in, but he had seen enough of what the terrorists were doing to know it would only be time before tragedy struck their home. A few of their faithful Shona workers quietly indicated to Ron that no one with a white skin would be safe, and that included his wife and children.

The whole world were against the white Rhodesians. The black terrorists were hailed as freedom fighters and Nkomo and Mugabe were lionised in the media which overlooked their atrocities and communist alliances. Brigid organised a two week visit to her family in Ireland for their family. While there, Ron explored career possibilities and felt attracted to trout farming. They had made their decision to emigrate. Back in Rhodesia the process of moving countries began. Ron was fortunate to get an offer for Mazuri Ranch of $40,000 for 13,468 acres of paradise, including an operating ranch with all the cattle. At that stage the Rhodesian and US dollar were roughly at parity. It was enough to pay their debts and have $2,000 left, which was all they were allowed to take out of the country.

Ron spoke to his key Shona workers individually about their plans. They were sad but felt he was doing the right thing. They quietly indicated that there was at least
one terrorist ‘sleeper’ amongst his workers, if not more, and it was time to get out. During his final six weeks service he said his farewells to his fellow soldiers and buddies and the major gave him light duties as a way of saying thanks for his years of service.

Ron had to report to Gwelo one last time to obtain his discharge papers for emigrating. At the drill hall a lance corporal in the Quarter Masters Store was scornful. Without looking at Ron he told his sidekick that here was another one getting on the ‘chicken train’ and that he had no time for ‘deserters’. He went through the records and charged Ron for all items issued and not returned, including one toothbrush, socks and underwear issued during the fourteen years of service. He gritted his teeth because he needed a certificate to leave the country. He wanted to retain his service medal ribbons from his drill shirt but was told, incorrectly, that they belonged to the military. Ron was thirty-two years old and had served many years under adverse circumstances and was being belittled by a junior NCO in his late teens or early twenties who would never see action in the field. They left on Ron’s 32nd birthday on the 5th January 1978 and flew to Johannesburg, looking out for the last time over Mazuri Ranch. From there they went to Ireland and eventually to the US.

Mugabe takes over

ROBERT MUGABE became the leader of the new Zimbabwe in 1980. He took control of what was then known as the ‘gem of Africa’, a country of great mineral resources, and productive farms that fed the entire population while being major exporter of food. The country had first world infrastructure and modern schools and hospitals accessible to the population. The people were tired of war and Mugabe had the blessing of the entire world.

Mugabe systematically strengthened his grip on power. He eliminated his black rivals and, through countless atrocities, forced whites to abandon their lands and brutalised the local black population. He entered an agreement with Kim Il Sung of North Korea to train soldiers as his personal army, trained in intimidation, brutal tactics and murder. Many whites were
murdered and most of the others left the country. During the first three years of 'land reforms' (farms were taken from the whites and distributed to Mugabe's cronies) about 250,000 farm employees and their 1.3 million dependents were forced from the farms by Mugabe's thugs. The farms and homes were looted and then abandoned. Food production collapsed and starvation became rife. Foreign aid was used by him as a weapon to reward those loyal and punish everyone else.

He blamed the former White Government and sanctions by the West for his self inflicted woes and received standing ovations at the United Nations. He and his family became immensely wealthy with vast land holdings, palatial properties within Zimbabwe and in other countries around the world. A good source of income were so-called 'blood diamonds' mined in Zimbabwe and sold for his account. Industry collapsed and it is estimated that unemployment was as high as 95%. Infrastructure had deteriorated with potholed roads, electricity and water shortages, closed schools and hospitals and raw sewage dumped into dams where drinking water was sourced from. Cholera became rife and HIVS/AIDS soared. Life expectancy declined from around sixty years in 1980 to about thirty eight. Inflation became so rampant that the Zimbabwe Reserve Bank issued notes of one hundred million dollars — which could not buy a loaf of bread. The main beneficiaries, apart from the Mugabe family, has been China. Without losing a single man in combat, it gained preferential access to the mineral riches of Zimbabwe, in return for supporting Mugabe in the early years and providing relatively modest aid.
Part 4

Descendants of Daniel Johannes Morkel of Onverwacht

20 Three Hundred years at *Die Bos* 129
21 Breaking the Pledge 143
22 Dan and Kitty Morkel 149
23 John Clother Morkel of Inyazura 161
24 Stellenbosch Morkels 167
25 Bellevue and Morkel Wines 169
26 *Morgenster* 173
27 Mrs van der Byl of *Morgenster* 177
28 Dooley, Frank and Pete Morkel 181
29 The Remarkable P.A.Morkel 187
30 Saving Brockman from a Lion 189
31 Lost in the Bush & Licked in the Face by a Lion 195
32 Morkels in the Anglo-Boer War 197
DESCENDANTS OF DANIEL JOHANNES MORKEL OF ONVERWACHT

Family Tree for Selected Onverwacht/Die Bos Morkels
Ten generations, 300 years on the farm

a1 Philip Morkel x Catharina Pasman
Onverwacht

b4 Willem Morkel x Helena C.Malan
Onverwacht

c6 Daniel J. Morkel x Maria D. Louw
Onverwacht

d7 Hendrik J. Morkel
x Catharina J. Theunissen
Onverwacht

d8 Daniel (Dik Daniel) J. Morkel
x Anna E. v.d.B. Cloete
Cloetenberg

d9 Willem Morkel
x Isabella M. Zeederberg
Morgenster

Morgenster Morkels
Rome Morkels
Broadlands Morkels
Mount Morkel Fouriesburg OFS

e1 Philip Morkel x Catharina Pasman
Onverwacht

e5 Dirk Cloete Morkel
x Susanna J. Neethling
Bellevue

Stellenbosch Morkels
Morkel Wines

f4 Hendrik (Hennie Bos) J. L. Morkel
x Helena C.P. Myburgh
The Bush/Die Bos

g2 Johannes (Johnnie Bos) A. Morkel
x Antoinette M. Malan
Die Bos

h2 Hendrik (Hanna) J.L. Morkel
x Susara G. Loock
Die Bos

i1 Johannes A. Morkel
x Anna C. Potgieter
Die Bos

j1 Tharine Morkel
j2 Hendrik J.L. Morkel
j3 Sarel (Kleinjan) J.P. Morkel
Die Bos

i1 Albertus (Albert) Morkel
x Marianna du Toit
Vereeniging

i2 Gerhard Morkel

j1 Malan Morkel
j2 Albertus (Albie) Morkel
j3 Morné Morkel
Cricket

h1 Hendrik J. Theron Morkel
h2 Charl Theron Morkel
h3 Daniel Theron Morkel
h4 André Theron Morkel

Theron Morkels
20 Three Hundred Years at *Die Bos*

*Stamvader* a1 Philip Morkel and Catharina Pasman settled on Onverwacht/Die Bos in 1713. It was passed on to his son b4 Willem and then to third son c6 Daniel Johannes and so on until 300 hundred years later the core is still in Morkel hands, albeit diminished through urban sprawl. It is a South African record[141] where it passed father to son, with Kleinjan (j3 Sarel) the tenth generation Morkel on the farm.

**c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel**

THIRD GENERATION c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel 1764 – 1825 was 24 when his father b4 Willem died in 1788. His older brothers had already left the house — on farms split off from Onverwacht — c4 Philip Hendrik 28 was farming Rome and c5 Willem on Voorburg. Thus Daniel Johannes inherited Onverwacht. Willem’s will also mentions that Daniel’s share also contained Zeemans Rust. Its name suggests a maritime connotation and it is likely that it lay close to the sea at False Bay, which later became Altena.

When his father died, Daniel Johannes had with him on the farm, his wife, Hester (aged 21), baby Aletta Jacoba (who died soon afterwards), his mother Helena Catharina (52), brother c7 Hercules (21) and sister c10 Helena Catharina (15). We do not know whether they all shared the main house on Onverwacht, or more likely, they already had the system of two houses. First the son and wife would occupy the second house and at a later stage, as his family grew and he took over, they swapped, when the parents retired and played a lesser role.

Daniel and his first wife Hester Keeve, had three children who all died young as babies. Hester died soon afterwards on 13 February 1792, aged 24.
Daniel married again the next year, in 1793, to his cousin (via his step-grandmother Elizabeth Morkel), Maria Dorothea Louw. They had six children:

- **d4 Willem 1795 – 1796. Died a baby.**
- **d5 Hester Anna 1796 – 1864. Married 1814 Pieter Gerhard Myburgh of Parel Vallei.**
- **d6 Willem Hendrik 1797 – 1799. Died a baby.**
- **d7 Hendrik Johannes 1798 – 1859. Married Catharina Jacoba Theunissen of Vergelegen.**
- **d8 Daniel Johannes (Dik Daniel) 1801 – 1843. Married Anna Elizabeth van der Byl Cloete.**
  - Farmed at Rome and then Oatlands. His son owned Bellevue, Bottelary, Stellenbosch.
- **d9 Willem 1803 – 1876. Married Isabella Margaretha Zeederberg. Farmed at Morgenster.**

Maria Dorothea died in 1807, and Daniel married again to Sophia Alida Brink, with no children from the marriage. She died of a stroke in 1824, leaving him a widower for the third time, until his death a year later.

As related in earlier chapters, Daniel was active with his brothers and cousin P.A. Myburgh of Meerlust in: the Krygsraad (citizen militia); had dragoons stationed at Onverwacht; established the Town of Somerset West and its Church. Daniel had the ornamental dovecote built around 1800 to 1810. Onverwacht was a convenient stopover for visitors who faced the formidable Gantouw Pass across the mountain. Daniel provided hospitality and assistance with spare oxen. He transported Ds. Spyker, the new pastor for the church, and his effects from Swellendam, by ox-wagon over the pass.

A year later on 25 August 1825 Daniel died, aged 61. On the way home from church he stopped over at the farm of a cousin. When he was ready to leave, someone else also leaving, cracked a whip, causing Daniel’s horses to bolt. He jumped onto the carriage to rein in the horses, stumbled against the seat and suffered internal injuries. During the week it turned septic, and caused his death. His mother Helena Catharina née Malan died a few months later on 27 October 1825, aged 89.

### d7 Hendrik Johannes Morkel

d7 HENDRIK JOHANNES Morkel 1798 – 1859 was 26 when his father Daniel died so tragically. He had lost his stepmother, father and grandmother in the two years 1824 and 1825. At that stage he had been married for four years to Catharina Jacoba Theunissen and they had two sons, with a third on the way. Catharina was the daughter of Martthinus Wilhelmus Theunissen of Vergelegen, who cooperated with his father and uncles in establishing the town and church.
Hendrik had an older sister d5 Hester Anna (aged 29 in 1825) already married to Pieter Gerhard Myburgh of Parel Vallei. He was the son of P.A. Myburgh of Meerlust cousin and friend of his father. Hendrik also had two younger brothers, d8 Daniel Johannes (Dik Daniel, 24) and d9 Willem (22). According to vineyard statistics quoted in an earlier chapter, d8 Daniel Johannes was farming the neighbouring farm Rome143, which had been split off from Onverwacht for c4 Philip Hendrik Morkel. This farm was likely returned to Onverwacht when he moved on to Morgenster.

Hendrik’s first wife, Catharina Jacoba Theunissen died in December 1831 aged 28. The tomb at Onverwacht bears the date 1831 and was likely constructed for her. Hendrik by now had six children (five boys and one girl) between one and nine years to look after. He married again within seven months, to Esther Elizabeth Morkel. Esther was the daughter of his cousin Willem and Esther Leonora Louw. After three children died young, they had a daughter born in 1837. Thereafter they had four boys who survived to adulthood, apart from five more who died as infants.
An Unamusing and Slenderly Informed Host

In September 1835 the Astronomer Royal at the Cape, Sir John Herschel (son of the famous William Herschel, the discoverer of the planet Uranus) stayed for two nights at Onverwacht because the inn at Somerset West was full. He describes a bit of the farm and his stay in his diary. He had less than complimentary observations and views of his host, d7 Hendrik Johannes (1799 - 1859) and his second wife, Ester Elizabeth Morkel.

The diary entry about his second night’s stay after a rainy day visiting the surrounding countryside:

'Descended & got home to Morchel’s where arrived around 6 & passed a dull & rainy evening in company with our very unamusing and slenderly informed (tho’ by no means slenderly personed) landlord & his rather fineish & would be ladylike young 2nd wife who after scolding the slave girls duly seems to think life has no other occupation left.'

These views were for his private diary. He also expressed appreciation for the hospitality for the two nights, and for the straight-forward way in which his host indicated an appropriate payment — for Herschel did not want to feel obligated.

It is a glimpse into the life of the family in the 1830’s. Growing up in the isolation of then far away Africa, Hendrik hosted one of the top astronomers of the time, one who was described as a prodigy in science and a prize winner at St John’s College, Cambridge. No wonder Hendrik was ‘slenderly informed’ by comparison. It also reflects the superiority the British of that time felt over anyone not an English gentleman.
The family at *Onverwacht* had been prosperous ever since *Stamvader* Philip’s times, but things now became more difficult. Hendrik took over in 1825, a year of economic downturn and lower wine prices. Some years later slaves were emancipated in 1834, with a transitional period of four years until 1838. While slavery was indefensible, its abolition had a severe economic impact. Compensation was assessed at less than half the value, and payable only in London. A shortage of labour developed as former slaves migrated en masse to Cape Town. Wages rose and drunkenness and theft increased. Gradually their labour returned and production of wine continued during the 1840s.

As related in the next chapter, in 1849 the family’s problems escalated dramatically when they broke The Pledge and helped supply much needed food for the convict ship *Neptune III* in Simonstown. The family was ostracised and pilloried and the family also suffered financially. Hendrik Johannes died at 60 in 1859. His second wife Esther Elizabeth lived on the farm for twenty more years, until the age of 68 in 1880.

**Lekker Danie**

e1 DANIEL (*LEKKER DANIE*) Johannes Morkel (1822 – 1879) was 38 when he took over the farm after his father died in 1859. He was married to Emmerentia (Bremsie) Elizabeth Malan and they had four children (three boys and a girl), ages 11 to 4. Daniel was assistant veld cornet for the district. He was known in the family as *Lekker Danie*, because of a pleasant and easy going personality. His wife, *ouma* Bremsie had a strong personality and kept the family and the farm firmly on course.

**Tough Times**

THE PROBLEMS which started during his father’s time steadily got worse. The second half of the 19th century was the most difficult time the family faced. Wine was a major export for the Colony, and an important part of the family’s income. A succession of disasters hit that industry during the second half of the century.

In 1859 the powdery mildew fungus (*oidium tuckeri*) created havoc in the Cape vineyards. The Hottentots Holland area including *Onverwacht* suffered especially because of its proximity to the coast. Treatment with powdered sulphur helped but in 1860 the industry was dealt another blow when the British Government entered into an agreement with France to drastically reduce import tariffs on French wines. Cape wines, of poorer quality and with long transport distance could not compete. In 1861 the British went further to abolish preferential tariffs for Cape wines and the industry
went into serious decline and exports ceased almost entirely.

But there would have been years of prosperity in the Colony as well. For example, the discovery of diamonds in 1866 in Kimberley created a substantial influx of immigrants and thirsty men in the dry interior, stimulating the economy, the demand for farm produce and the sales of liquor, including wines and particularly brandy. However, in 1886 the dreaded phylloxera beetle was discovered in the Cape vineyards. This pest (*phylloxera vastatrix*) came from North America and had already caused havoc in the European vineyards (in the 1860’s) \(^{148}\). The only remedy was to dig up and burn the vines and replant new stock grafted on resistant wild vine roots. For three to four years while waiting for the new crop to mature, there were almost no grape harvests and wine production.

Daniel Johannes’ wife, (Bremsie) contributed money (reputedly from selling jewels) and effectively bought the farm. There was not much for the others to inherit, a first for the family since Philip Morkel and his wife acquired the farm in 1713. Bremsie was known for being very careful with money — her *suinigheid* (frugality) saved the farm and stories are told how she walked around with her bag of coins and counting each penny spent. *Onverwacht* was one of the few farms that survived in the family, with a portion (*Zeemansrust?*) close to the Strand sold off. Other farms in the district were also sold during these hard times and many beautiful old farm houses fell into disrepair. These problems persisted until the end of the century and exacerbated by a world wide economic depression during the 1890’s.
Hennie Bos

f4 HENDRIK (HENNIE BOS) Johannes Louw Morkel (1854 – 1926) was 25 when his father died in 1879 and he took over the farm, under his mother, ouma Bremsie’s firm guidance. By late 1890s, the worst was over for the family and Hendrik was able to build up the farm again. Onverwacht was renamed The Bush, easier to say in English and more in fashion. During Hendrik’s time the Afrikaans version Die Bos became accepted and he became known as Hennie Bos. The old name Onverwacht fell in disuse. Hendrik had been married a year when his father died. His wife, Helena Catharina Phillipina Myburgh came from a neighbouring farm Parel Vallei. Their first child died in infancy. Eleven more children followed, of which ten survived to adulthood, including my father g9 Daniel Johannes. One son, g5 Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel drowned during a family seine net fishing expedition at Kogelbaai in 1903. I knew the others as uncles and aunts. They were:

- g2 Johannes Albertus (Johnnie Bos) 1882 – 1966, married Antoinette Malan,
- g3 Emmerentia Elizabeth (Dolly) *1883, married Philippus Brand Faure,
- g4 Ester Leonora (Essie) 1885 – 1941, married Rocco de Villiers,
- g6 Helena Catharina (Nellie) *1889, married Frank Sleigh Smuts,
- g7 Alida (Alice) *1891, married Andreas Bernhardus Theron,
- g9 Daniel (Dan) Johannes Morkel 1895 – 1945, married Catharina Elizabeth Theron (my parents)
- g10 Maria Dorothea Louw (Maraaitjie) *1897, married Albertonie Hermanus Broeksma
- g11 Sophia Margaretha (Margriet) *1899. married Broeksma after her sister’s death.

JOHANNES ALBERTUS as the oldest son inherited Die Bos and my father farmed Altena, a portion close to the Strand. Even after marriage and scattered around the country, all the siblings kept a close association with Die Bos and the Morkel family heritage.

The oldest daughter Emmerentia (Dolly) married P. B. (Albie) Faure, who farmed Kahlenberg, at the Faure railway siding, not far from Meerlust. He was MP and later senator and was known for his support of projects in the community such as the hospital, harbour at Gordons Bay and the coastal road to Hangklip. They had three daughters and two sons, Hennie and Hannes. Hannes 149 joined the airforce during WWII and reached the rank of Lt Col at a very young age. He was decorated DSO and DFC (and bar) and an ‘Ace’ fighter pilot (five enemy aircraft shot down) in the European war. Postwar he was commanding officer of the Langebaan Air Force Base
The Tangle Foot Squad

As a child I loved listening to the stories of the older folk, and they loved telling and retelling them. Oom Bully Anderson told of the pranks of a group he was associated with in his young days. They included my father’s brother, oom John, cousins and friends who played rugby together. They were frequent visitors to the old farm — my father had several older sisters. My grandmother called them the tangle foot squad. Tangle foot consisted of square sheets of cardboard covered with sticky paste. They were placed around the room, usually on tables and sideboards to catch flies. Visualise someone stepping on such a sheet by accident to get the picture.

Oom Bully Anderson told many stories about the Tangle Foot Squad and I remember only a few. In reality they were a bunch of larrikins, but it gives a bit of the flavour of the time (about 1900 to 1910).

My aunt ‘Dolly’ played the organ in the church. By the time everyone had left after the evening service and she had packed up it was already dark. Her ‘beau’ waited for her with his horse buggy and was a target for the tangle foot squad. On one occasion they smeared fresh cow manure on the reins and in the dark he noticed it only when his hands were wet, sticky and smelly. At another time they quietly disengaged the draw-straps from the cart so that when he spurred the horse on to move, the cart stayed in place while the beau went over the front washboard holding on to the reins.

Another incident involved a somewhat simple member of the family who stayed as a share cropper in one of the houses on the old farm. The squad reversed the wheels of his horse cart. The large back wheels were fitted to the front and the small front wheels at the back. When he passed the farmhouse on his way to town at an awkward angle, he commented to my grandfather Hennie, ek weet nie wat nie, maar dinge voel snaaks vandag. ("Hennie, I don’t know what’s wrong but it all feels strange today".)

It sounds pretty mean as I write it, but it was told with flair and as a twelve year old I lapped it up.
and later at Ysterplaat. After retirement he joined brother Hennie and his wife Karen, on the family farm, which over time they expanded to one of the largest in the area, concentrating on wine and tobacco. He was married to Marguerita (Liefe) Klerck and they had six children.
The second daughter, Ester Leonora, married Rocco de Villiers. They had three sons, Jacob Nicolas Carel (Nic) *1909 who became Chief Justice (Regter President), Hendrik Johannes (Hennie) *1911 who was CEO of Escom (Electricity Supply Commission) and Rocco, *1917 a GP in the Strand. Their three daughters were Helena (Girlie) *1912 married to Diederik Willem Koekemoer, Rebella (Onie) *1915 married to Jan Hendrik Stadler (Hennie) van Zyl director of Triomf fertiliser and chemical industries, and Ester (Essie) *1920, a gifted musician, who married Pieter Roux in the Strand.

Rocco de Villiers had a remarkable career. He was Secretary of the Executive Council for the Government of President Steyn of the Orange Free State (O.F.S.). During the Anglo Boer War the president and a small staff, including De Villiers had to move from town to town to avoid the conquering British army. They joined General C.R. de Wet, and Rocco was captured and sent to Bermuda as POW. On his return after the war he married Essie Morkel. Ex-president Steyn attended the wedding in Somerset West. He qualified as solicitor and built up a practice in the OFS. Rocco believed strongly in the cause of the Afrikaner and was involved in forming the National Party of General Hertzog. He keenly remembered the British scorched-earth war against the Boers, and where women and children suffered in concentration camps. When the Botha government joined Britain in WWI, he was active in the rebellion. He was interned for two years in Pretoria and his wife and children had to stay with her parents at Die Bos. On his release, he had to rebuild his solicitor’s practice. When he sold parts of it, he inadvertently became involved in drawn-out legal disputes and he suffered badly from uninformed and malicious gossip. Sadly his own party failed to back him and bitterly disappointed, but loyal to the end, this proud and honourable man took his own life. His wife then had the task of raising six children under difficult conditions, and with wonderful success.

Helena (Nellie) married a Free State solicitor Frank Smuts. They had two sons, Frank, who became a judge, and Morkel Smuts.

Alida (Alice) married Andries Theron, a medical specialist in Johannesburg. They had two daughters, Helene and Nettie.

Maria (Maraaitjie) married advocate A.H. Broeksma (Broeksie). They had a daughter Marlene and two sons, Cornelis (Kerneels) a judge and Hennie who farmed at Aberdeen in the Karoo, and was mayor of that town for many years. Broeksie was attorney-general of the Cape Province and from 1937 to 1939, secretary of defence for South Africa. He then practised as Kings Council at the Bar. After Maraaitjie’s death he married her sister Margriet, who had lived with them for most of her life.
DURING 1897 Hennie Bos did a major renovation of the house, with the family renting a house in the Strand while the work was done. The thatch roof was replaced with corrugated galvanised steel and the faced and simple gable modernised into the Victorian style.

Hennie Bos cultivated a moustache and sideburns and was dubbed Bismarck for looking similar to the German Chancellor of the time with that name. By the 1920s he bought back the portion near the Strand (then called The Lodge), which had been sold off. It was farmed by my father as the younger son and this is where my brothers and I grew up. The name was changed to Altena (Lit: All to near) and by the early 1940s it became unencumbered when my father finally repaid the mortgage.

Johnnie Bos

\textit{g2 JOHANNES (JOHNIE BOS)} Albertus Morkel (1882 – 1965) was married to Antoinette (Nettie) Maria Malan. They had three children. The oldest, \textit{h1} Antionette Maria Meijer Morkel married Daniel Stephanus du Toit of Bredasdorp. \textit{h2} Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel (Hanna) became the ninth generation owner of Die Bos. \textit{h3} Daniel Jacobus Malan Morkel (\textit{Vat}) studied physical education at Stellenbosch university and settled in Vereeniging Transvaal where he became principal of the High school. His sons Albert and Gerhard excelled in sports and his grand-sons, Albie and Morné became international cricket players.

John and several Morkel cousins and friends were involved in forming the Somerset West Rugby Football club. John was the first Captain of the Somerset West team. Several of that team became rugby Springbok internationals.

\textbf{“We don’t go to church in a donkey cart”}

A snippet of oral history told over dinner in our home: As horrible as it was, the Anglo-Boer War hardly affected the family on the farm, although relatives were involved in the fighting on both sides. The Boer Republics and their cause were far away from the Cape — more than 1,000 to 2,000 kms distant. The main impacts were that the Imperial Army commandeered horses from the Cape farms, and that pesky Argentine ants came with horse fodder imported from South America. The British took the horses and left the farmers with only one horse each. The family was too proud to be drawn by donkeys and thus the carriage was converted to a two shafted, one horse vehicle to go to church in style.
John carried on a family tradition of purse seine net fishing, where a group of family and friends would ride along the beach at low tide on the back of John's lorry and, when spotting a school of harders (mullet) under his guidance manoeuvre the net around the fish and bring them on shore.

After Nettie died, John married again to Hester Anna Maud Morkel, widow of Johannes Jacobus Hendriksz. Sunday afternoons were open house at Die Bos for all comers. It was special, with many former rugby Springboks and other family and friends enjoying the hospitality, of John, first with Nettie and afterwards with Maud.

Hanna Bos

h2 HENDRIK (HANNA) Johannes Louw Morkel (1914 – 1996) married Susra Loock and they had three children, i1 Johannes (Johan) Albertus, i2 Annerie and i3 Joseph (Seppie) Johannes. Hanna adopted modern farming methods, particularly after taking over following his father's death in 1965. His father tended to be conservative and clung to traditions. There was increasing pressure on the farm as ever more utilities crossed the farm which lay in the way. Roads, including the Garden Route divided highway, train tracks, high tension electrical cables on large pylons, three water mains from Steenbras dam to Cape Town and telephone cables. Parts of the farm became difficult to access with township developments came ever closer. Hanna sold off part of the farm for urban development and continued with the remaining part of Die Bos, as an economic unit.

In 1983, on the 270th anniversary of the Morkels at Die Bos, the descendants of Hennie Bos gathered for a celebration at the farm, hosted by Hanna and my brother Charles. Videos of this event are on the Morkel website as youtube clips, including one that shows the farmyard and buildings and one where Hanna gives a conducted tour (in Afrikaans) of the house and photos of Morkel ancestors.

Johan & Kleinjan

i1 JOHANNES (JOHAN) Albertus born 1947 took over from Hanna. He married Anna Catharina Potgieter and they had three children, j1 Tharine Morkel, j2 Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel (died tragically in a motorcar accident) and j3 Sarel Johannes Potgieter (Kleinjan) Morkel. Kleinjan is the tenth generation running the core of the old farm, after the bulk had gone for urban development. He also runs a steel manufacturing business.
Four Generations Owners of *Die Bos*

**Johannes Albertus Morkel**

**Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel**

**Johannes Albertus Morkel**

**Sarel Johannes Potgieter Morkel**

Four photos supplied by: Kleinjan Morkel
SIR,

It is with great reluctance that I again trouble you, but circumstances render it unavoidable. You are aware, sir, that for an alleged violation of the pledge all intercourse was dropped with me by the public. When I perceived it, immediate steps were taken by me to disprove the charges thus falsely laid against me, and satisfy the public mind that I was innocent of what I was accused of. I applied to the Anti-Convict Association of Hottentots Holland for the privilege of having my case inquired into; and, if found innocent, to be restored to public favour.

This, my application, has been entirely disregarded; and I find that I can no longer endure the pain of public contempt, whilst I sincerely regret any proceeding of mine which may have been constructed into an act of disrespect for the opinion of the public; and being desirous of granting all my influence and support to the Anti-Convict Association, in order to aid the people to accomplished this grand object, I beg to request that the A.-C. Association of Cape Town, as the parent of all other Associations, will cause the necessary inquiries to be made into my case, and to see justice done to one of its true members.

"I have, etc.,"

H.J. MORKEL
21 Breaking the Pledge

In 1849 the *Neptune III* arrived at the Cape with about 300 convicts on board. The local community rebelled and pledged to turn their backs on anyone who helped the authorities with aid to the criminals. The Governor eventually persuaded colonel Stanford to supply badly needed food and he in turn persuaded his Morkel neighbours of *Onverwacht* to help. The family thus broke the pledge and was ostracised and pilloried.

THE JOURNEY of the *Neptune III* came towards the end of transportation of convicts to Australia. At that time about 10 to 20 ships, each carrying around 200 to 300 convicts made the journey every year until 1853. In April 1849 the Privy Council in London decided to make the Cape Colony another convict settlement, similar to those in Australia. The third Earl Grey, colonial secretary, intended to send a special class of convicts to the Cape. They were Irish peasants who had been driven to crime by the famine of 1845. They were also towards the end of their sentences and the idea was that they could obtain a ‘conditional pardon’ to settle as ‘free exiles’ at the Cape, provided they did not return to Ireland, England or Scotland. Earl Grey sent a letter to the Governor at the Cape asking to ascertain the feelings of the colonists regarding this special category of convicts. Due to a misunderstanding, the *Neptune* sailed with its cargo of convicts before the opinion of the colonists was received.

The ship also had the famous Irish rebel and activist, John Mitchel on board. His father was a Presbyterian Minister in Ireland. John practised as a barrister and defended poor Irish Catholics who suffered under their absentee English landlords and their agents. He became an articulate activist for their cause, which became desperate during the potato famine, which started in 1845. Mitchel was accused of
sedition and tried and found guilty by a packed jury. His jailers gave him special treatment (own cabin and prison cell, and better food), partly because he was a gentleman, but also to isolate the other prisoners from his charismatic and subversive influences. He was excused from work because of his asthma. While he accepted these privileges, he wrote that he never asked for them and he remained hostile and contemptuous of the British Government, and particularly of Lord Grey.

In his book, Jail Journey, (courtesy Hennie Morkel) John Mitchel is eloquent and scathing about the treatment of the Irish and the transportation system. Dating back to the 17th century and Oliver Cromwell's conquests, the British had dispossessed the Irish and through harsh penal laws deprived them of education and job opportunities. They became poor and ignorant and the butt of English jokes and ridicule. Their plight worsened during the terrible potato famine of the 1840's, while their British landlords exported plentiful food supplies abroad. When they stole food in desperation, they were treated harshly in prison and those on board the Neptune had been transported, first to Bermuda, then to the Cape and eventually to Van Diemens Land (Tasmania).

The Anti-Convict Agitation

WHEN THE news that the ship was on its way, reached the Cape, feelings ran very high and an Anti-Convict Agitation was formed. At a meeting on 4 July 1849 a severe thunder storm broke loose but those who attended in the open square stayed in the drenching rain to show their support against what they saw as a degradation of the Colony. Artist Thomas Bowler produced a lithograph of the meeting showing the rain storm and smoke blowing horizontally from stacks.

The meeting stirred up feelings and the Anti-Convict Agitation organised a pledge not to employ any convicts and to turn their backs on anyone who helped the Government with aid to the criminals. Anyone who broke the pledge ran the risk of complete ostracism. He would be publicly cursed, people would throw mud and rocks at him, his image publicly burned and he would be banned from society.

In September 1849, the Neptune III with about 300 convicts on board dropped anchor at Simon's Town, the naval harbour on the Cape Peninsula. Church bells were rung to mobilise the populace against the 'plague ship'. The Government was forced to establish a bakery and butchery because the existing shops refused to deal. Regular vigilante type meetings were held and merchants had to defend themselves against
accusations. Shops were boycotted on rumours and had to present meetings with referrals of their innocence, and if approved, were let back into the fold 154.

A merchant Benjamin Norden helped the convicts with supplies and suffered a boycott. He was pelted with stones in the Heerengracht (Cape Town’s main street) on 15th October 1849 and became an invalid as result. The movement was described as the ‘Cape Inquisition’ by Sammons 155. The local Governor, Sir Harry Smith found himself in a difficult position. Privately he sympathised with the colonists, but his duty was to the Imperial Government in London. He responded to a deputation with:

‘I am proud to remember that today is the anniversary of Waterloo – and I would prefer to be killed by God Almighty than to ignore the commands of Her Majesty’s Government and thus commit an act of rebellion.’

**Breaking the Pledge**

SIR HARRY Smith had to await orders from London (correspondence via sailing vessels took months each way) and in the meantime the Neptune desperately needed food. On 10 October, in the middle of the night the attorney-general and the Collector of Customs called on colonel Robert Stanford to supply food from his farm Gustrouw, at the present day town of Gordons Bay.
Sir Daniel or, perhaps Sir Hendrik?

Heap, reported that it was said that a knighthood was also (apart from the one for Robert Stanford) offered to Daniel Johannes Morkel but that he refused it. It is more likely to have been offered to his father, Hendrik Johannes, as owner of the farm. I remember my father telling the story over dinner table: that there could have been knighthood in the family, but that our ancestor declined to accept it.

He had a direct oral history connection to the event. An elderly aunt who visited the farm regularly for summer holidays told my father how, as a young daughter, she accompanied her father to Stellenbosch in their carriage and that the locals threw stones and tomatoes and hurled abuse at them. She was Esther Leonora Louw Morkel born on 1837 (thus about 12 at the time of running the blockade). She married a merchant H.C. De Jongh and she continued to take her vacations on the farm until her death in 1902. My father would then have been about 7 years old. Her story about the stone throwing in Stellenbosch and the rejected knighthood are the oldest items of oral family history that I heard directly.
ALTHOUGH STANFORD identified with the protest, he agreed in the belief that by ‘his timely assistance open rebellion and civil war would be averted’. He was assured that the assistance would be required for only a short time since Sir Harry Smith was ‘almost daily in expectation of receiving replies to the despatches forwarded to Earl Grey (the Colonial Secretary)’157.

The family farm Onverwacht adjoined Gustrouw and Stanford asked for assistance. Peggy Heap tells that D.J. Morkel helped to supply the ship. This would have been Daniel Johannes (1822 – 1879), 27 at the time, although his father Hendrik Johannes (1798 – 1859), 51 in 1849, was the responsible owner.

Although it is not mentioned in any of the accounts, the location of the farms Gustrouw and Onverwacht could also have played a role. Both farms bordered on the coast of False Bay, and the food could have been transported by small boats directly from Gordons Bay or the Strand across the bay to Simon’s Town. This would have by-passed blockades and harassment which were prevalent along the land journey through the sandy Cape Flats and along the Peninsula.

Supplying the ship with about 300 convicts on board plus their guards and crew for five months must have been a formidable task. As the months passed, the anti-convict agitation became more intense and they also refused supplies to the rest of the navy at Simon’s Town as well as the Governor and senior officials. These people did not starve, so alternate supply routes were clearly in place. Stanford did not simply supply a few wagonloads of food. According to Mitchel Stanford placed 2,000 head of cattle, beside sheep without number at the Governor’s disposal. However, no tradesmen would touch them, so inexperienced soldiers had to butcher the meat, build ovens and bake bread, enduring incessant volleys of civilian laughter and ridicule.

There was an active black market operating with opportunistic entrepreneurs exploiting the situation. Mitchel mentions that life in the ship was not intolerable, and they were not battened down. About 120 convicts were transferred to an old dismasted frigate Seringapatam anchored nearby, to alleviate congestion on the Neptune159.

In London Lord Adderley pleaded the Cape Colony’s case and the Imperial Government changed their mind and the Neptune was sent on its way to Tasmania. In gratitude, the main street of Cape Town, Heerengracht, was renamed Adderley Street.
The Family Ostracised

AS THREATENED, all hell broke loose when the word got out that The Pledge was broken and Stanford and the Morkel families were in disgrace and ostracised. The sanctions were indeed severe and relentless, even as Hendrik Johannes protested innocence. According to Peggy Heap they were mercilessly attacked.

‘Haystacks on their farms were burned down, banks refused to transact business with them, creditors pressed for payment, their servants deserted them, their children were expelled from school and subjected to every kind of insult and abuse. Even medical attention was refused resulting in the death of one of Colonel Stanford’s children.’

Stanford was a man ‘broken in health and financially ruined’. Unable to pay his debts he was obliged to ‘assign his estates’ and left the Colony. The agent he appointed to look after his affairs in his absence, connived to strip the estate of most of its value. His properties, including Gustrouw were sold at public auction on 5 April 1855 to help pay his debts. Queen Victoria knighted Robert Stanford for his services and awarded him £5000 (a substantial sum in those days) as compensation.

The agitation did not fade away without some achievements, as it led to another movement to obtain free, representative government for the colony. The British government granted this concession, which had been previously promised by Lord Grey, and a constitution was established in 1854 of almost unprecedented liberality.
Dan and Kitty Morkel

Dan and Kitty Morkel farmed on Altena (lit. all too near), so-named because of its close proximity to the Strand. It was a portion of the old family farm that was sold off during the tough times in the 19th century and bought back by Dan’s father Hennie Bos. Dan turned a farm considered to be too small to be economic into a viable business. He and Kitty were active leaders in the community.

He lived to serve

Dan and Kitty Morkel

MY FATHER Dan (Daniel Johannes Morkel 1895 – 1945) was a good tennis player and he met my mother Kitty (Catharina Elizabeth Theron 1899 – 1980) who was teaching at the Strand Primary School, at tennis. They had four sons, Hennie, Charles, Danie and myself, André. The tennis club formed an important part of their life. Many trophies were displayed in our lounge. We grew up on the fringes of impromptu Saturday evening parties where tennis teams were invited to the farm after their matches. Dan was a charming host and he had a way of getting his guests to serve the drinks. Having grown up with six sisters and servants, it was natural to be served. The location of the Strand as a holiday resort town ensured the success of the annual Boxing Day mixed doubles tournament and a five-day Boland tournament. Much of the leadership and initiative for these tournaments came from Dan and Kitty and that tradition was carried on by my brother, Charles and at the time of writing now by his sons, Daniel and Charl.

Dan’s strengths were in leadership and community affairs. He was more of a strategist than farmer. The farm was too small to be economical as a wine producer and he made it pay by concentrating on milk, vegetables and table grapes and fruit for the nearby Strand. Apart from tennis, Dan and Kitty led active social lives and were natural leaders in the community.
New-fangled Motor Car

There was almost a generational gap of 13 years between my father and his older brother John at Die Bos. Oom John was conservative and continued with the old ways. Dan embraced the new technologies that were emerging during the early 1900s and was keen to try them out. When my grandfather bought his first car, Dan was the family Chaffeur. Shortly after they were married, Dan and Kitty and brother John and his wife Nettie took the car over Sir Lowry’s pass for a weekend at Grabouw. The roads were still quite primitive and Dan accelerated up a tricky hill, John, sitting next to him applied the handbrake to prevent them sliding back. The drive shaft broke and they were stranded miles from home. I suspect old fashioned horse carts brought the party and the damaged car home.

Music Lessons

Music lessons were part of growing up and most aunts and cousins were good at the piano, violin and other instruments. When young Dan arrived a bit early for one of his lessons he overheard the teacher say — ‘my next pupil is young Dan Morkel — he has no talent whatsoever’. That was the end of his music education.

Harvester Ruined

A horse-drawn harvester was the most sophisticated mechanical device on the farm. It would cut the oats, bundle them and use twine to tie sheaves with a knot. A mechanical marvel. One night, halfway through harvesting, a pipeline supplying Cape Town with water from Steenbras dam broke directly beneath where the it was parked, and the machine was flooded and totally ruined. The family asking, why a spot was chosen directly above the pipeline.
Dan was a member of the Stellenbosch Regional Council and the Western Province Dairy Farmers Board, and active in politics, contesting unsuccessfully the local seat as the candidate for the National Party for the national parliament election in 1943.

In his last years Dan suffered from high blood pressure and had to stop playing tennis. In July 1945 he travelled to the Transvaal as part of a delegation of milk producers to for a conference and relationships with government. He had a massive stroke and died a few hours later.

His funeral was well attended. The main eulogy spoke about his dedication to family, friends and the community and ended with ‘hy het geleef om te dien’ — he lived to serve. This was engraved on his gravestone — a fitting tribute for a great man.

Kitty was devastated when her husband died but carried on as best she could with the farm and raising her children. Over the years Kitty re-built her life in the community. She continued an active role in the tennis club and politics, stepping into roles my father left vacant. She was appointed to the Board of Film Censors, and about three times a week she would drive to Cape Town to view movies. She continued with this for many years and it gave her a special interest in life and new friends in the city.

She travelled to the UK and Europe several times, when it was still quite novel to do so. The journey by mail–ship took about 11 days from Cape Town to Southampton and on subsequent journeys she preferred to travel on freighters carrying small numbers of passengers. There were usually enough bridge players on board for regular rubbers of the card game.
Ouma Kitty was a remarkable lady who had an active life with a positive outlook in spite of losing her husband so early on. She was a leader in the community, played in the first tennis team until her sixties, travelled extensively and cherished her extensive family with four sons, four daughters-in-law and 15 grandchildren. We fondly remember her.

Hennie Morkel

WHEN HENNIE was born, family tradition would have him as Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel. My mother felt it was time that the Louw connection be dropped. My father agreed and proposed that it be substituted with Theron. Subsequently all four sons had Theron as their middle name. Hl Hendrik Johannes Theron Morkel was born 2nd September 1926 and graduated in medicine at the University of Cape Town. He practised as a general practitioner in Winburg in the Orange Free State with cousin Rocco de Villiers and subsequently at Balfour in the Transvaal. He then specialised as an anaesthetist and practise as such in Cape Town.
Hendrik Johannes Theron
Morkel ca 1986

Hennie en Paddy Morkel 2003

Hennie & Paddy Morkel and Family at Milnerton 2003
Arnaud, Hennie, Jean, Antoinette, Richi, Danie, Rinke, Henri, Dan
Antionette, Hennie, Paddy, Fiona
Louise, Daniel, Christian

Family photos
Hennie was a keen golfer all his life. He was married to Paddy Geeringh and they had four sons. i1 Danie (Daniël) studied medicine and is a general practitioner in The Strand. He is married to Antoinette Wade and have three sons, a daughter and six grandchildren. i2 Hennie did actuarial studies and an MBA. He worked in insurance and lives in Sydney, Australia. He is married to Fiona Martin with two sons, Daniel and Christian. i3 Jean studied dentistry and is professor of Maxillo-Facial & Oral Surgery and head of department at the Tygerberg Medical School of The University of the Western Cape. i4 Arnaud is a neurosurgeon in Port Elizabeth and is married to Antionette Burger.

h1 Hendrik Johannes Theron Morkel 1926 – 2011 Patricia Maria (Paddy) Geeringh
i1 Daniël Johannes Morkel *1953 x Antoinette Wade *1954
   j1 Hendrik Wade Morkel *1980 x Catharina Elizabeth Pretorius.
      k1 Dané Antoinette Morkel *2009
      k2 Míla Elizabeth Morkel *2009
      k3 Daniël Henri Morkel *2013
   j2 Lieze-Mari Morkel *1982 x J.P. Duvenage
      k1 Leah Duvenage
      k2 Christoffel Daniel Duvenage
   j3 Richard Wade Morkel *1983 x Martie Potgieter *1984
      k1 Emma-Mari Morkel *2014
   j4 Danieł Wade Morkel *1987 x 2015 Estelle Smith *1988
i2 Hendrik Johannes Morkel *1956 xx Fiona Ruth Martin *1963
   j1 Daniël William Morkel *1993
   j2 Christian André Morkel *1998
i3 Jean André Morkel *1959
i4 Arnaud Jacques Morkel *1962 x Antionette Burger

Charles Morkel

h2 CHARL THERON Morkel was born on 6 April 1928 and studied medicine at the University of Cape Town. He played rugby for the University's first team and also for Western Province. Many anticipated that he would make the Springbok team but a knee injury requiring surgery put an end to that. Charles practiced as a general practitioner at The Strand and was an active leader in the community. He played rugby for Somerset West and, like his parents, was a strong tennis player, taking leadership roles in both sports. He took a key role in a visionary development of a rugby sports complex named after him: The Charles Morkel Rugby Stadium. He was
active in community service with the development of homes for the elderly, and tennis coaching for children. He donated grounds and amenities for rugby fields for the brown community. He was involved in various boards and community activities, including: establishing a private hospital, Medicity Vergelegen in Somerset West; director of Medicor (running several county hospitals); the Boland Chamber of
Executors; Bolandbank and The Strand Co-op and Strand Town Council. He was President of Boland Tennis Association (BTA) and Vice-President of the South African Tennis Council (SATC) and supported a range of community activities — Rapportryers, Strand Boeresport meetings. He took the lead role in developing part of the family farm Altena for urban development. Charles was a dedicated family man, loyal to family and friends and active in church leadership. He was married to Lindi Sadie with four children and twelve grandchildren.

i1 Daniel is an orthopaedic surgeon in private practice and serves on Tennis SA council and chairperson of BTA. i2 Maryke and husband Henk van Niekerk farms, and are involved with tourism and a restaurant. i3 Karen is married to Nicolaas Cilliers, a director of publishing company Future Managers. i4 Charl (PhD chemistry) is director of Patagon Flex Plastics, tennis coach, active as BTA treasurer and co-founder of Anyone for Tennis Development Program with Daniel.


i1 Daniel Francois Morkel *1961 x Annelie Van der Merwe *1970

j1 Charl Francois Morkel *1998
j2 Lize-Alet Morkel *2000
j3 Frans Daniel Morkel *2003
j4 Carli Morkel *2003

i2 Maria Magdalena (Maryke) Morkel *1962 x Hendrik du Toit Van Niekerk *1961

j1 Hendrik du Toit Van Niekerk *1989
j2 Lindi Van Niekerk *1992
j3 Charles Morkel Van Niekerk *1994

i3 Catherina Elizabeth (Karen) Morkel *1964 x Nicolaas Albertus Cilliers *1961

j1 Nicolaas Cilliers *1994
j2 Charl Morkel Cilliers *1995
j3 Henri Cilliers *1998

i4 Charl Ernst Morkel *1967 x Anelize Steenkamp *1971

j1 Charl Theron Morkel *2002
j2 Aneldi Morkel *2004

Danie Morkel

h3 DANIEL THERON Morkel was born on 12 July 1929. He studied agriculture at Stellenbosch University and veterinary science at Onderste poort. He farmed at Altena and practised as a vet in Somerset West, until his 84th year. Earlier, Danie had been mayor of The Strand, the youngest in the country. He served with brother Charles on
the town council for many years, and also on the divisional council of Stellenbosch and on the council of the Stellenbosch University. He married Nita Heydenrych and they had three children, i1 Claudia, i2 Daan and i3 Ernst; eight grandchildren; and four great grandchildren. Claudia married Joe Kruger, managing director of GAM New Energy (Pty) Ltd. They have two sons and a girl. After a portion of Altena was developed into town real estate Danie received the farm. He sold that for urban development and bought Diemerskraal in the Wellington district, and later the neighbouring farm Voëlgesang, for Daan en Ernst farming respectively. Danie also farms a lucerne producing farm in Ladismith. On Diemerskraal Daan has also developed a popular function centre for weddings, conferences, business functions and promotions. They make use of providers in the community to provide catering and services needed for the functions. He is also a keen small aircraft pilot and maintains an operating landing strip on the farm with hangar space for small aircraft of the district.161
André Morkel

h4 ANDRÉ THERON Morkel (author) was born on 11 September, 1932. After completing a master of science degree at Stellenbosch University he became a research assistant at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). He obtained a doctors degree in metallurgy in 1960 and was awarded a post doctoral stipendium, at the Max Planck Institute for Physical Chemistry at Göttingen in Germany.

He changed careers for business studies and completed a masters in Business leadership at the University of South Africa and where he was appointed Professor of Management in 1968. On six months sabbatical leave in 1975 he was visiting scholar at the Harvard Business School, and was then appointed professor of Management at The University Western Australia in Perth. He also taught as visiting professor at various business schools in Australia, South East Asia, California, and Copenhagen and Helsinki.

He married Barbara Elise Retief and they have four sons, \(i1\) Daniel, \(i2\) André, \(i3\) Philip and \(i4\) Charl, and six grandchildren. Daniel is a doctor and specialises in psychiatry in private practice. He is married to Katrina Moore, a doctor working in general practise. They have two children, Tom and Anna. André has an honours degree in engineering and MBA from MIT and runs his web development business Openwire in Perth. He is married to Kiersten Gregg and they have a son Charles. André and Kiersten are active in Rogaining and adventure racing. Phil worked in Europe and Africa for years and was involved in outdoor sports such as snowboarding and white water rafting. He is a fly–in–fly–out operator for a Conoco/Phillips oil and gas floating producing vessel. He is married to Michaela Fender from Austria and have two daughters, Sophia and Hannah. Charl with degrees in commerce and MBA established an internet business at an early age, worked in Silicon Valley and France for several years and started a cloud software business which he sold to a US–based operation. Based in Brisbane he is vice president for Australia and Asia for a global enterprise management software business. He is married to Valerie Graff of France and they have two daughters, Heidi and Paige.

\(h4\) André Theron Morkel *1932 x 1963 Barbara Elise Retief *1936
\(i1\) Daniel Retief Morkell *1965 x 1997 Katrina Moore *1971
\(j1\) Thomas John Morkell *2004
\(j1\) Anna Lucy Morkell *2006
\(i2\) André Retief Morkel *1967 x Kiersten Gregg *1973
\(j1\) Charles André Morkel *2015
\(i3\) Philip Retief Morkel *1969 x 2005 Michaela Fender *1973
\(j1\) Sophia Fender Morkel *2007
\(j2\) Hannah Fender Morkel *2009
\(i4\) Charl Retief Morkel *1974 x 2005 Valerie Ginette Gisele Graff *1968
\(j1\) Heidi Barbara Graff Morkel *2005
\(j2\) Paige Christiane Morkel *2008
DESCENDANTS OF c6 DANIEL JOHANNES MORKEL OF ONVERWACHT

André Morkel ca 1977

Family photo

André & Barbara Morkel 2005

Family photo

André & Barbara Morkel and Family 2015
André, Kiersten with baby Charles, Katrina, Daniel, Valy, Charl, Michi, Phil
Anna, Sophia, Paige, André, Barbara, Heidi. Hanna, Tom

Family photo
23 John Clother Morkel of Inyazura

By Philip Morkel and Rozanne Winter

John and his brothers Hubert and Philip were the sons of Bertie and Heps Morkel. John was a prominent tobacco farmer at Inyazura, Rhodesia. He excelled in rugby as a lock and prop forward and was captain of the Rhodesian Rugby Team that beat the 1949 All Blacks from New Zealand. He and his wife Avril retired to Harare in 2000 and then moved to Howick KZN in 2009. He died in 2010.

JOHN’S LINE came from 4th generation Hendrik Johannes Morkel of Onverwacht and his second wife, Esther Elizabeth Morkel. This marriage produced three rugby springboks and four Western Province players, including John and his father Bertie. John served in the military in Italy during WWII, where he played rugby for the wartime unofficial Springbok team. He studied agriculture at Stellenbosch University, where he captained the University Rugby Team and also played for Western Province. After graduating, he settled as a tobacco farmer in Inyazura, in the Umtali district of Rhodesia (now Mutare Zimbabwe). John married Avril Turner-Dauncey, and they had four children, Rozanne, Philip, Roger and Karen.

Rozanne married Chris Lund and they had three sons, twins Anthony and Craig, and Mark Christopher, who all live in Toronto, Canada. Anthony has an interior design business in Toronto and Craig a recruitment company. Mark graduated from OCAD University in Toronto. After a divorce Rozanne married Architect John Winter and they have lived and worked in Australia, Zimbabwe and Oman.

Philip qualified as a chemical engineer in Cape Town where he married Anne Creech of Stellenbosch. In 2011 he moved to Toronto, Canada with an international gold mining group. They have three sons. The oldest, John has a doctorate in electrical engineering, employed at Amazon.com, and is married to Kristen Greeff.
They have twins, Kate and Jack and live in Seattle. Philip’s second son Bryan is an industrial engineer in Toronto while the third son David is studying at Brock University in St Catharines, Ontario.

Roger is an urologist in Hillcrest, KZN (Kwazulu). He and his wife Karen Rock have two sons, Chris and Jason, students at Stellenbosch University.

Karen married Kevin van Lelyveld and they live in Howick KZN. They have two children. Lara, with a masters degree in political science from Rhodes University and is a teacher in Johannesburg. Grant is a veterinarian and has been working in Spain and KZN.

---

**Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1798 – 1859) xx Esther Elizabeth Morkel (1813 - 1880)**

**Philip Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1841 – 1910) x Maria Goudrica Freislich (1846 - 1937)**

**Johannes Gysbertus Borcherds Freislich Morkel (Bertie) (1887 – 1953) x Hepsbah Ada Clother (Heps) 1901 - 1970**

**John Clother Morkel 1923– 2010 x Avril Diane Turner-Dauncey *7.4.1931**

**Rozanne Morkel *16.8.1953 x Chris Lund**

  **Craig Lund *18.3.1980**

  **Anthony Lund *18.3.1980**

  **Mark Christopher Lund *13.9.1988**

  **xx John Winter**

**Philip Morkel *18.3.1955 x Anne Creech**


  **Kate Morkel *2014**

  **Jack Morkel *2014**

  **Bryan Morkel *19.7.1986**

  **David Morkel *28.6.1995**

**Roger Morkel *30.10.1957 x Karen Rock**

  **Christopher John Morkel *13.6.1990**

  **Jason Keith Morkel *26.5.1994**

**Karen Morkel *31.8.1959 x Kevin van Lelyveld *11.8.1952**

  **Lara Diane van Lelyveld *11.2.1984**

  **Grant Kevin van Lelyveld *30.10.1986**

**Hubert Clother Morkel *10.3.1925 x Ethelrida Fraser *11.6.1928**

**Colleen Alexandra Morkel 26.6.1952 x Teunis (Ton) Jonker 24.1.1945**

  **Jean Morkel Jonker *14.6.1978**

  **Charl Morkel Jonker *15.3.1982**

**Bertie Allan Morkel *9.1.1955 x Sharon Kibble**

**Philip Clother Morkel *16.4.1927 x Margot Reynolds 8.1.1937**
John and Avril Morkel and family. 10 August 2002, after their Golden wedding.

Back: Bryan M., Karen M., Anne M., John M., Craig Lund, Grant and Kevin v.L.
Middle: Roger M., Rozanne Winter John M, Avril M, Philip M, Karen v.L.
Front row: David M., Chris M., Mark Lund, Jason M.

M = Morkel. v.L. = van Lelyveld. Missing in the photo: Anthony Lund. and Lara van Lelyveld

Philip Morkel
24 Stellenbosch Morkels

by Gerda van Niekerk née Morkel ¹⁶²

Daniel Johannes Morkel 1801 – 1843 was the name–sake younger son of third generation Daniel Johannes of Onverwacht. He was large, tall, athletic and adventurous. At 18 years he already weighed about 300 lbs (ca 137 kg), and was called Dik (thick) Daniel but was it muscle rather than fat. He initially farmed for his father at Rome and then settled at Oatlands with his wife Anna Cloete 1809 – 1877.

AS A young man, Dik Daniel raced horse carriages on the firm wet sand at the beach at low tide. The competitor had to run alongside the speeding carriage pulled by four horses, jump on, grab the whip and lightly touch a designated part of a horse, for example the ear or shoulder. The winner was the one who did it the neatest and most deftly. It was an exciting but dangerous sport, and Daniel performed so well that they used a handicap system to even things out.

War broke out between the Pondos and the Tembos in about 1816 and Daniel joined as a volunteer — if the date given is correct, he would have been fifteen years old. He rode his own horse with the patrol on the way to the Eastern Province. He did not get far — in fact only about 40 to 50 kms into a journey of more than 800 kms. On the mountain on the far side of Grabouw (just over the Hottentots Holland Mountains) his horse fell and Daniel broke his leg. His parents sent slaves to carry him home on a stretcher — two groups of eight taking turns were necessary to carry him down the mountain.

On another occasion his horse became footsore one day when he travelled to the farm Muldersvlei to see a girlfriend. While resting in Stellenbosch he met his father’s second cousin, Dirk Cloete, who took him to his farm Nooitgedacht, which was on the road between Stellenbosch and Muldersvlei.

The competitor had to run alongside the speeding carriage pulled by four horses, jump on, grab the whip and lightly touch a designated part of a horse, for example the ear or shoulder.
(Nooitgedacht had been in the Cloete family since Dirk’s great grandmother Sibella Pasman’s days). There he met the daughter Anna Elizabeth and borrowed her horse to complete the journey to Muldersvlei. The delay and arriving with another girl’s horse terminated the courtship abruptly. Daniel subsequently married Anna Elizabeth van der Byl Cloete and they had six children. They farmed on the portion of Cloetenburg that remained after the town Somerset West was laid out on this property.

Anna Elizabeth eventually developed influenza and was nursed at Stellenbosch by her widowed mother. Dik Daniel visited her on her sickbed but succumbed to an attack of gallstones. He was buried in the Tomb on Onverwacht.

**e4 Daniel Johannes O’Flinn Morkel 1836 – 1903**

His Godfather was Dr. O’Flinn, a Roman Catholic Doctor who practised in Stellenbosch and who was a good friend of the family. Daniel was a land surveyor and practised first in Worcester and thereafter in Oudtshoorn. He retired in Sea Point. He was married to Alida Johanna Le Sueur.

He rescued the two church window panes from 1723 from a pile of builders rubble when the church was being rebuilt in 1862/63. They were of Philip Morkel and his sister-in-law Sibella Pasman. Daniel and Alida left no children and his niece Anna Morkel inherited the window panes. She left them to the Stellenbosch Museum.

**e5 Dirk Cloete Morkel.**

Dirk was born at Oatlands in Somerset West on 5 August 1888 and died on 29 June 1914. He went to school with Mr. McLachlin in Stellenbosch until he was 16 and he then went to the farm of his brother-in-law, Mr. P.U. Fischer to learn farming. Mr Fischer then sent him for another year for finishing with the English pastor, Rev. Carlyon who had a good influence on him.
In 1861 he married Susanna Johanna Neethling from Neethlingshof. He bought the farm Bellevue and farmed there until 1903. There were 6 children of whom only one, the third son f4 Dirk Cloete had descendants. He was respected and well-loved and a born leader of people.

In 1903 his sons Jan and Dirk took over the farm and he retired in Stellenbosch to a house that his daughter f3 Anna continued to live in for many years. He died in 1914 and in the eleven years he lived in town he served on a School Board and Committees, and the Curatorium for the Theological College of Stellenbosch University. He was also inspector of roads for the district council, a director of the Stellenbosch District Bank and served as field cornet for 40 years.

f1 Daniel Johannes Morkel

f1 DANIEL WAS the son of Dirk Cloete Morkel of Bellevue. He was born on 5 September 1862 and was baptised in the Rhenish Church on die Braak — the N.G. church was in the process of being rebuilt. He studied medicine in Europe — first in Switzerland, Basle and then in Germany, Erlangen and München and then again in Zürich where he completed his final examination. He practised for five years in Piketberg and died young at 31 years in 1894.

f2 Oom Jan Morkel

OOM JAN (f2 Johannes Henoch Neethling) Morkel was born in 1864. He and his younger brother, f4 Dirk Cloete inherited a kind and gentle disposition from their father and were good friends all their lives. Jan went to school in Stellenbosch and lodged with Mr. Rowan, inspector of schools. The school later became a police station. In a spirit of adventure he went to the Transvaal gold fields and the Free State diamond fields, but not for long. He returned to the farm where he started farming with his father. In 1905 he married Catharina (Kitty) Neethling. They were childless.

When his father died he succeeded him as director of the Stellenbosch District Bank and on his death in 1949 he was still chairman of the board. He farmed Bellevue together with his brother Dirk. In 1920 he gave the farm to Dirk and settled at Stellenbosch until his death in 1949. He was chairman of the Board of the Chamber of Executors which he helped found after the first world war. He also served on the church council, the Board of The University of Stellenbosch, the Bloemhof School Committee and he was director of the KWV (Wine Farmers Cooperative) from its founding until he retired in 1944.
f4 Dirk Cloete Morkel 1869 – 1923.

DIRK WENT to school at Stellenbosch Gymnasium and lodged with his uncle Marthinus Neethling at Evergreen at the top end of Pleinstreet. He excelled in sport — particularly rugby and cricket. He played rugby for the Stellenbosch first team from 1887 – 1898 and for Western Province 1894 – 1895. He was a member of the famous rugby touring team of 1898 (Holy Brigade).

g7 Dirk Cloete Morkel 1902 – 1927.

DIRK WAS athletic and became the hurdles champion for the Western Province and in 1921 also for South Africa. He left in April 1923 to study dentistry in London. In December of the same year his father died at 54 after a short illness. It was a bitter set–back for him, but he continued his studies, even though he had his own health problems (from rheumatic fever as a child). He died in London in 1927 shortly before his final examinations and without having seen his family since his departure. He was buried in Stellenbosch next to his father in the family cemetery plot. Thereafter the health of his mother deteriorated and she died in 1933.

Dinah van Wyk

DINAH (COLOURED servant of the Morkel family) was born in the Paarl and was 14 years old when she came to work on Bellevue in 1869. Her brother Ernst also worked on the farm and after her father’s death, her widowed mother and her other children also came to live on the farm. She lived in the house and over time became like one of the family. She started working for Ouma before the birth of the son Dirk Cloete and loved him the best of all the children.

The governess was a Miss Maeder and as she taught the children. Dinah, or Aia as we called her, was also a willing student. She learned to read and as she grew older, she spent her time in the evenings reading the bible.

She lived for the family, with great love for the children — first one generation and then the next. In later years she did not have much contact with her own family; there were a few nephews but the family members lost contact with each other. When she made her will she wanted to leave all her money to the Morkels, but the family did not accept, and her will eventually benefited her brothers and godchildren. She was 66 years with the family and died aged 80. She was buried in the Morkel family cemetery.
25 *Bellevue* and Morkel Wines

The K.W.V (Wine Farmers Cooperative) was established under Government sponsorship in 1918 to improve the quality and marketing of Cape wines. Good table wines were developed during the late 20\textsuperscript{th} century following years of research and development into vine growing and wine making. Several generations of the Morkel family on the farm *Bellevue*, on the Bottelary road near Stellenbosch, were actively involved \textsuperscript{163}.

\textsuperscript{f2} JAN MORKEL, (Johannes Henoch Neethlingh) 1865 – 1949 was a founder director of the K.W.V. until he retired in 1944. In 1943 under the leadership of rugby Springbok player \textsuperscript{g2} P.K. Morkel (Pieter Krige) the original wine cellar at *Bellevue* was expanded. He made history in 1953 with the first commercial Pinotage vineyard in South Africa. It was a new cultivar, a cross between pinot noir and hermitage, developed by Prof. Perold at the Stellenbosch Agricultural college at *Elsenburg*. In 1959 P.K. won the General Smuts trophy for the overall champion wine at the South African Young Wine show with his Pinotage.

In 1966, P.K’s younger brother, \textsuperscript{g5} Danie Morkel took over from him and his son Dirkie, the present owner, joined him in 1978. He upgraded the existing cellar in 1998 to a modern, productive and quality-driven operation. Dirkie obtained a B.Sc. Agric degree at the University of Stellenbosch in 1974. After completion of his degree, he was employed in a research capacity at the Institute for Viticulture and Oenology in the Viticulture Department. In 1978 he completed an Honours degree cum laude in Viticulture.

Until 1999 *Bellevue* wines were sold to K.W.V., who bottled and distributed the wine under the *Houdamond* label in the United Kingdom. Dirkie, however had his own vision with *Bellevue’s* wines and under his leadership in 2000, the first vintage for
own distribution was bottled. A sophisticated team operates at Bellevue, responsible for production and marketing and distribution, including exports to eleven countries in Europe, North America and Asia.

The Wines


The Farm,

THE ORIGINAL farm was acquired by Christoffel Groenewald in 1701 from the Governor, Willem Adriaan van der Stel. It was called Houd-den-Beck (lit: 'shut-up' — as the Governor was notoriously corrupt). The rather rude name was toned down to Houd-den-Mond, and in 1851 it was changed to Bellevue.

In 1861 it was bought by Dirk Cloete Morkel and has been in the family for four generations. The old cape dutch homestead, dated 1803, was restored in 1990 and has been declared a national monument. It has been home to Dirkie Morkel, his wife Heidi and four daughters since 1979. In 2006 Bellevue became an enthusiastic member of the Biodiversity in Wine Initiative (BWI). Parts of this involved leaving areas of uncultivated native vegetation, mainly fynbos, in their natural state.

Signal Cannon

A SIGNAL cannon at Bellevue dates from the reign of the VOC as part of the defence system. With the expansion of the colony in the seventeenth century a series of signal posts with cannons were placed at several locations. When enemy ships were sighted from Leeukop at the Cape, the cannon in the Castle would be fired. The next signal post responded, and thus in a chain reaction the whole colony was alerted, and the burghers were called up to protect their colony. This system was used four times at the Cape. The first time was in 1695, when French ships were sighted and a possible attack was feared; in 1781 when an English fleet attacked the colony at Saldanha; in 1795 with the first British occupation and the last time in 1806 with the battle of Blaaauwberg and the second occupation of the Cape.
One of the signal posts was in the Brackenfell area. In 1862, Dirk Cloete Morkel fetched the then discarded cannon with two span of oxen, and positioned it in front of the homestead. In 1961 South Africa obtained independence from the British Empire. Danie Morkel (father of the current owner, Dirkie) decided that the occasion demanded due festivity and with great care and hours of work the old cannon was restored to its former splendour. With homemade gunpowder the cannon once again sounded over the Stellenbosch valleys.
26 Morgenster

d9 Willem Morkel 1803 – 1876 was the 3rd surviving son of third generation c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel and his 9th child by his second wife, Maria Dorothea Louw. He married Isabella Margaretha Zeederberg, whose family became known for running stage coaches. While we do not know how he made his money, he was a man of means.

They were the ‘royal Morkels’.

IN P.W.MORKEL’s Genealogy164 d9 Willem is described as “Capitalist, Resident at Morgenster, Somerset West”. He would have bought the farm from its previous owner, his uncle, c4 Philip Hendrik Morkel.

His wife, Isabella Margaretha was the second oldest daughter of Roelof Abraham Zeederberg (originally Zetterberg) of Stromstad, Sweden165. Zeederberg arrived at the Cape in 1798 and established himself by tendering for, and salvaging a cargo of coffee from a shipwreck off the Cape of Good Hope166. From this entrepreneurial beginning he became a successful businessman. Some of his descendants established and operated horse- and mule-drawn mail coaches throughout southern Africa. In the 1890’s, encouraged by Cecil John Rhodes, the Zeederbergs ran coaches from Pietersburg (Polokwane) and Mafeking (Gaberone) to Bulawayo and Salisbury in Southern Rhodesia167.

Willem and Isabella had ten children of whom five boys and three girls survived to adulthood. Some farmed at Morgenster and neighbouring farms of Rome and Broadlands. Others went further afield to the Transvaal, and north of the Limpopo to what later became Rhodesia (Zimbabwe) and Nyassaland (Malawi).
e4 Willem Morkel

e4 DR. WILLIAM MORKEL (1837 – 1902) was a remarkable personality in the old Cape. As a child he was sent to school at Stellenbosch and had as his master a well-known Scottish Dominie, Humphrey McLachlan. At 19 he proceeded overseas to the University of Edinburgh, and at the early age of 21 obtained his M.D. In the same year he was enrolled as a fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons in London and returned to the Cape. For nearly half a century thereafter Dr. Morkel practised his profession.

One of his first actions was to open up the mineral springs at Caledon, which though patronised earlier by farmers, had not been exploited by qualified medicos till then. Dr. Morkel followed the discoveries of diamonds late in the 1860s and became District Surgeon at Du Toit’s Pan, after the founding of Kimberley, and later at Barkley West. Here he enjoyed the friendship of lieut. Governor Sir Richard Southey, of Griqualand West. Dr. Morkel owned the largest wagon, a ‘ship of the veld’ built for trekking in the interior. It measured 23 feet long, 6 feet wide and 6 feet from floor to roof. In the early eighties he went prospecting on the new Barberton goldfields, and lived for a while in the Waterberg, Transvaal. He then returned to Somerset West where he established a large practice. Apart from his other interests, he was a keen racing man and a great friend of such Turf personalities as the Hon. John Faure,
Charles Barry, John Manuel and others. Aged sixty-five, he fell ill, was partly paralysed, and died on 24th March 1902.

Dr. Willem married Anna Christina De Wet (1842 – 1912) and they had nine children. The 7th child, Daniel Gustavus Morkel (1876 – 1947) fought for the Boers in the Anglo Boer War of 1899 – 1902, and was a prisoner of war held in Bermuda by the British. Later he joined the South African Police at Pietersburg, Transvaal and fought in World War I.

Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel

Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel born 1838 married Johanna Maria Mollerstrom Van Breda. They farmed at Broadlands, close to the other Morkel farms. They had fourteen children, of whom 6 boys and 4 girls reached adulthood.

The fourth child, Alexander Jacobus Morkel 1871 –1945, married Constance De Villiers and farmed at Broadlands, Mount Morkel, Fouriesburg, O.F.S. The family has farmed in the area for generations and Mount Morkel, a red sandstone formation is a known feature of the landscape at Fouriesburg. They had one son and six daughters. The son Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel *1905, married Elsabe de la Harpe Malan, and their son, Alexander Jacobus Morkel was born 10 February 1933 at Mount Morkel.
**e8 P.G.J. Morkel**

**e8** PIETER GERHARD Jacobus Morkel (1844 – 1915) was the second mayor of Somerset West and owner of *Oatlands* from 1868 to 1903. It was the former farm of his uncle, Dik Daniel, and was the remaining portion of *Cloetenburg* after the town of Somerset West was built on part of it. He married Maria Susanna Theunissen (1846 – 1902) and they had a son Nicolaas Jacobus Hendrik Morkel born 1877, and five adult daughters, Antoinette Maria (1871 – 1948), Helena Catharina *1875 x Johann Adam Beijers, and Margaret Alexandra (1876 – 1936), who married Pieter de Waal of *Happy Valley*, Helderberg and Johanna Elizabeth (1881 – 1944) x Richard John Roberts and Maria Susanna Meijer Morkel (1882 – 1942) married to Herbert Ebenezer Anderson.
27 Mrs van der Byl of Morgenster

*e1* Daniel Johannes Morkel, inherited *Morgenster* when their father *d9* Willem died in 1876. Wine farms at the Cape at that time were uneconomic and external funds were needed. He sold the farm to his brother-in-law, Alexander van der Byl who had married his sister, *e3* Margaret Elizabeth Morkel. They lived in style and Mrs van der Byl was a gracious hostess and personified the ‘royal’ Morkels*171*.

**ALEXANDER VAN der Byl** was a man of means who also owned the large property *Fernwood*, at Newlands (later the Parliamentary Recreation Club) and a farm *Nachtwacht* near Bredasdorp where he bred horses. He was celebrated as a breeder and owner of race-horses and he won the Agricultural Society Cup for three consecutive years, 1860 to 1862 for races at Green Point Race Course.

Van der Byl disposed of *Nachtwacht* and his stud when he took over *Morgenster* in 1885. His wife, Margaret Morkel was a beautiful woman and was the hostess for many years, also after her husband’s death in 1899. *Morgenster*, and other Somerset West farms such as *Rome* and *Vergelegen*, became attractive for weekend visits and parties for Cape society — about 90 minutes by train or half a day by horse carriage from the city.

The Alexander van der Byls, whose elegant hospitality was renowned, entertained many notabilities both at *Fernwood* and *Morgenster*. Among those who attended a garden party at *Fernwood* were the two young princes, Prince George of Wales — later King George V — and his brother Prince Albert Victor, when, in the course of a world cruise, their ship *H.M.S. Bacchante*, spent some weeks at the Cape.
Dinner delayed

An apocryphal story is told that on a glittering occasion when the van der Byls were entertaining lordly guests at Morgenster, dinner being long overdue, Mrs van der Byl sent a maid to enquire the reason. On being informed in a whisper, of the situation in the kitchen, Mrs van der Byl announced: ‘I’m afraid my cook is as drunk as a lord’.

Morgenster

Arthur Elliot taken from P.W. Morkel Family History p9a
THE MORGENSTER drawing room was furnished in the grand manner of the day with large pieces of walnut and mahogany furniture, which were reflected in great gilt mirrors hanging on the walls. On a round table in the centre of the room stood an array of silver-framed, signed photographs of royalty and other elevated personages. In the dining-room were sporting pictures and a vast mahogany sideboard laden with silver, including many racing and show trophies. Mrs. Van der Byl, like many Victorian ladies, took great pride in the ferns and pot plants which she cultivated in a small conservatory. Despite a full social life, she never allowed the reins of the household to slip out of her grasp and always wore her keys at her waist.

In reporting her seventy seventh birthday celebrations in 1912, a newspaper of the day wrote of Mrs van der Byl:

‘Her career in Cape society has been truly distinguished and royalty, as well as a long list of notabilities, have shared her lavish hospitality dispensed at Fernwood and at
Morning Star, Somerset West where she keeps up great ceremony. Besides being a perfect hostess, Mrs van der Byl has the advantage of possessing an extremely handsome appearance coupled with brilliant conversation powers. In fact, some thirty years ago she created quite a sensation by her beauty and wit at a State Ball given by the late queen Victoria at Buckingham Palace.

The S.A. Lady's Pictorial, September 1915 had the following about Mrs van der Byl: 'Mrs. Alexander van der Byl ... recently celebrated her eightieth birthday ... Her long life has also been a very full one, for in addition to her many duties, she has had several hobbies, and excelled in all of them. Archery, croquet, riding and gardening were among her many pursuits.'

Mrs van der Byl died in 1919 at the age of 84. Being childless, the farm went to Mrs van der Byl's favourite nephew, major William Alexander Barnett, son of Maria Dorothea Morkel who was married to captain Charles James Barnett. Major Barnett died in India and the estate passed to his only child, Zaidee, always known as Babs. Miss Barnett, a keen horsewoman farmed for many years at Morgenster. During her ownership the splendid front gable fell some time in the 1940s, and was restored. She sold Morgenster in 1959 and the well reported auction of the beautiful antique furniture stimulated awareness of its value in the community.

Side gable at Morgenster with date 1779.
The decoration shows two intertwined letter MM for Malan and Morkel were from the days when the farm was owned by Jacobus Morkel and c3 Catharina Morkel

Simon van der Stel Foundation
28 Dooley, Frank and Pete Morkel

By André and Pete Morkel

* Willem (Dooley) Morkel was featured in Chapter 13 as father of cricketers Denys and Ray Morkel. His father Daniel Johannes Morkel, married to Maria Adriana van der Byl, inherited Morgenster when his father Willem died in 1876. He farmed there until 1885 when he sold it to his brother-in-law Alexander van der Byl. Daniel and Maria with their six sons and five daughters trekked to Transvaal by mule wagon and settled in Pretoria.

---

d9 Willem Morkel 1803 - 1876 x Isabella Margaretha Zeederberg 1809 - 1886

e1 Daniel Johannes Morkel 1832 – 1894 x Maria Adriana van der Byl 1844 – 1904

* Willem (Dooley) Morkel 1864 – 1926 x Marguerite Alexandra Van Breda 1864 – 1917

1. William Algernon Kingsmill (Algy) Morkel †1927
2. Alexander van der Byl (Alec) Morkel
3. Frank James Sievewright Morkel *1898 †1976 Bulawayo
   x Maria Josephine de Kock *1901 Cape Town †1977 Bulawayo
4. William Francis van der Byl Morkel *1931 Mongu, N. Rhodesia †1984
   x Sheila Julia Jefferson*1930 Miri, Malaysia
5. David Francis Morkel *1956 Livingston, N. Rhodesia x Vicki
6. Michael Philip Morkel *1957 Fort Jameson, N. Rhodesia x Gail Strever
7. Claire Michelle Morkel *1957 x Phil Gargan
8. Peter van der Byl Morkel *1960 Umtali S. Rhodesia, Vet
   x Estelle De Klerk *1962
11. Raymond Kenneth Bellville (Ray) Morkel 1908 - 1953 (cricket)
Willem (Dooley) Morkel

DOOLEY MORKEL was born in Somerset West in 1864 and married Marguerite Alexandra van Breda, who died in 1917. He had a long record as a civil servant when he retired in 1923 to take up his abode on his farm at Princess Vlei. He was in the Public Works Department all his life, and retired as chief clerk. He was a keen cricketer. A regular player in his younger days, and he continued with the sport occasionally, until quite a late age. He never failed to give an excellent account of himself when he did.

In his youth, Dr J.P. Duminy, a former vice-chancellor of the University of Cape Town, and his brothers played cricket with the Bellville Cricket Club.

In his memoirs he commented on their captain, Dooley Morkel.

‘Willie Morkel, affectionately known as ‘Dooley’ lived in a large double storeyed house with his wife and five sons, Algy, Alec, Denys, Frank and Ray. Algy was a good fastish bowler and played for Bishops. Dooley Morkel gave a tremendous lot of his time and energy to make the most of the rather scanty resources which were
available to establish the basic amenities of the Bellville Club. The most important and wholly fortuitous of these was a piece of fairly level and well-grassed ground on the Hardekraaltjie outspan. The grass was tough, Cape kweekgras variety, and was well cropped by grazing cattle, and my (JP Duminy) farmer brothers and cousins lent Dooley a hand with the carting of gravel and white clay to lay down a good playing pitch. Dooley was a new-ball bowler and a grand captain, being always wise, helpful and inspiring. Under his leadership we were a willing and happy team’.

‘Mr. Morkel played in cricket match, Bellville against Western Province, only a few years ago when he was 55 years of age, he took eight wickets for 24 runs. As lately as last year, when the Villagers Club celebrated its Jubilee, he took part in the Old Crock’s match against Hamiltons. He was over 60 but he played throughout the game, and showed as good form as many of the far younger men. Mr. Morkel’s sons have all distinguished themselves on the playing fields and they owe their inspiration and their training to their father. He was particularly proud of Denis. He sat through three whole day’s play during the recent Currie Cup match, where Denis did so well and he fondly recalled the days he bowled to ‘the little chap in the yard at Bellville when he was only six, and he shaped very well’

From his obituary, quoted in P.W. Morkel, p27:

Dooley Morkel was a quiet, retiring man, who had many old staunch friends in both sections of the community. Though well over military age he went through the recent German East Africa campaign (World War I, 1914 – 1918) and declined a commission as he wished to be with the young men. His was a most kindly nature, and the intimate affection between himself and his boys showed him to have been an ideal father.

**Frank Morkel**

g3 FRANK JAMES Siegewright Morkel was born in Cape Town in 1898 and died about 1976 in Bulawayo, Southern Rhodesia. He was married to Maria Josephine de Kock and they had two children, h1 William Francis van der Byl Morkel and h2 Lorraine Morkel who married Tom Lithgow. Frank was named after a family friend Sir James Siegewright of Lourensford.
Pete Morkel measures the anterior horn of the Rhino in preparation for the implantation of a transmitter. Luanga National Park, Zambia.

*Africa Geographic*

Above and right. *Pete Morkel* the vet in the team collaring elephants against poaching in the Democratic Republic of Congo.

*Paris Match.*
Frank had a diploma from Elsenburg Agricultural College. He worked at various agricultural institutes: Potchefstroom Agricultural College; an Agricultural College at Mongu on the Zambezi in Barotseland in Western Zambia; Matopos Agricultural Research Station near Bulawayo and the Engacheni farm for mentally challenged people. He was a kind hearted person keen on cricket. In the First World War he served as a medic in the 7th SA Infantry in German East Africa.

William Francis van der Byl Morkel was born in Mongu, Zambia (then Northern Rhodesia) on 8 Jan 1931 and died 16 April 1984 in Pretoria. He married Sheila Julia Jefferson, born 24 May 1930, in Miri, Malaysia. He did his basic BSc Agric degree at Natal University and subsequently he did a post grad at Cambridge, a diploma in tropical agriculture in Trinidad and a MSc at the University of Zimbabwe. He worked in Zambia, Zimbabwe and South Africa. His wife Sheila was a nurse and worked most of her life. They had four children.

- David Francis Morkel, chemical engineer, was born Livingstone, Zambia on 26 Oct 1956 and married to Vicky Logan with two children living in New Zealand.
- Michael Philip Morkel, town planner was born in Fort Jameson (now Chipata) Zambia and married to Gail Strever with two children in Johannesburg.
- Claire Michelle Gargan (nee Morkel, teacher,) was born in Zimbabwe and is married to Phil Gargan, manager of a large tea estate. They live in the USA with two children.
- Peter van der Byl (Pete) Morkel 16 Sept 1960, Umtali (now Mutare) Zimbabwe. Married Estelle de Klerk (Born 14 July 1962), with two children, Cheri and Benoit van der Byl Morkel. Pete is a vet and Estelle a radiographer, living in Kakamas in the Northern Cape.

PETE HAS become widely known for his work as vet in saving wildlife in various parts of Africa. He has joined up with teams that have been featured in TV documentaries and magazine articles, for their efforts against poaching and protecting endangered large African species, including rhino, sable antelope and elephant 174 175.

Pete has inherited the third print of the Liefdekrans epic poem (see p23 and p29). Apart from Die Bos and the Cape Archives, this would be the only other print from 1725 in existence. Pete can trace the document back to f1 Dooley Morkel and then to his grandfather Frank, and eventually to himself. As on p28, it is likely that c4 Philip Morkel inherited the copy and after his death it was part of Morgenster Estate, sold to d9 Willem Morkel, grandfather of f1 Dooley Morkel.
The Fighting Chamber of Commerce, Blantyre

In January 1892 P.A. Morkel arrived in Blantyre, British Central Africa (later Malawi). A Chamber of Commerce was formed, and he busied himself to make every member a good shot and good horseman — they were destined to become a 'Fighting Chamber'. Morkel and his men were sent to fight against Chief Matopo who was on a warpath and had just come in from the north, murdering everyone in his path. The patrol was successful and most of the casualties were due to malaria. They were called upon several times to quell tribal fighting. These tribal quarrels were the salvation of the first white pioneers: had the Natives united from the start, they would have wiped them all out.

P.A. Morkel told of one of their gravest dangers — the Matabele. In the Matabele war of 1893, the Shangani patrol, under Major Allan Wilson was isolated and suddenly attacked by an overwhelming number of King Lobengula's bodyguard. Only one man escaped. Major Forbes, who was also hard pressed, and was rescued in time by the arrival of a relief column, could send him no help.

In 1894 the Pioneers worked on the African Trans-continental Telegraph line from Cape to Cairo — the great scheme of Cecil John Rhodes. As their work increased, so their difficulties mounted. The Mashonas discovered what a rich harvest the Matabele reaped. They started a rebellion and murdered a pioneer, McCallum; P.A. Morkel's younger brother, Dan, was with him and escaped death.

When Mr. Morkel was constructing his line from Katunga on Lower Shire across the Shire Highlands to Fort Johnston, he felt the bitterness of the rebellion — only 48 hours after McCallum's death. The whole night he and a companion, Grant, were surrounded by 500 Mashonas. Again the 'Fighting Chamber' was in the field supplying reinforcements.
The Remarkable P.A. Morkel

Daniel Johannes Morkel and Maria van der Byl had twelve children. The third, P.A. (Paul Andries) born in 1868 had a remarkable career both north of the Limpopo in Nyassaland (Malawi) and Rhodesia (Zimbabwe) and finally as mayor of Middelburg in the Transvaal. He was married to Jeanette Schulz born 1868 and they had three children, Cecil Forbes, Daniel Johannes van der Byl and Iris.

THE FOLLOWING extracts are from ‘The Witbank News’ of 17 June 1949, probably shortly before his death. When P.A. was at school in Somerset West, his uncle Mr. Laurence van der Byl asked him to accompany him in his column to Rhodesia. His parents thought he was too young, but three years later his family trekked to Transvaal by mule wagon. Paul Andries was a great lover of animals. He was for a time associated with the Geo. Hayes Co., the great coaching company, operating with 8,000 horses and mules between Christiana and Barberton.

On the Rand he was a prominent sportsman, winning four prizes riding and wrestling on horses without saddles. His final contestant was Sir Abe Bailey. They were both the same age, 22 years and very fit and well mounted. After a hectic struggle, Paul was declared the winner. In 1890 he was commandeered in Pretoria under the Vierkleur (flag of the Transvaal Boer Republic) for the Maloboch war. This was carried out in true military fashion. He tells how the recruiting officer, son of President Kruger, approached him and, without argument, issued his orders: ‘Report within three days to your commandant, Melt Marais, with horse, saddle, bridle and rations for three days. After that it will be mieliepap (maize porridge)’.

In 1894 P.A. Morkel visited the Transvaal on business and met his future wife, Jeanette Schulz. They were married on 20 February 1895 and returned to Blantyre. Their stay was joy mingled with hardship. The statesmen in Britain could see no
future for the country, and to them the pioneers were a band of pirates. Without a
police or defence force, the ‘Fighting Chamber’ of Commerce did their duty.

On the evening of one of the greatest and bloodiest battles north of the Zambesi,
Mr. Morkel received a cable: ‘guns must get to Mpseni’ (300 miles north of Blantyre).
Ten thousand natives had gathered from all parts of Africa. Without guns major
Forbes could do nothing. There had already been heavy losses after two rebellions;
many trek oxen had died from hippo fly, and there were no roads through the dense
jungle of North Eastern Rhodesia. A prayer of relief went up when one fine morning
two British officers, captain Gough and lieutenant Godfrey, arrived with regiments of
Gurkhas from Nepal and Sikhs all the way from India.

When the Chamber found respite from fighting, P.A. Morkel was not idle. He was
an active coffee grower and a sportsman. With major Forbes he formed the Blantyre
Sports Club and owned some of the finest horses. He was awarded numerous
valuable trophies.

**Back to South Africa**

IN 1899, the family trekked south for a change. It was a very trying journey, and on
arrival in Durban, Mrs. Morkel was laid aside with blackwater fever, and was
forbidden by her medical adviser to return to Blantyre.

On his return to the Transvaal in the late 1890’s they settled in Middelburg,
Transvaal. They had two sons and a daughter, g1 Mr. C.F. Morkel, g2 Mr. D.J. van
der Byl Morkel and g3 Miss Iris Morkel (Mrs. P.F. Kincaid).

P.A. Morkel was mayor of Middelburg from 1916 to 1918 and served on several
community organisations. He was awarded the M.B.E. (Member of the British
Empire) during World War I for his services to the war effort.

On the outbreak of the second World War, Mr. Morkel was once again in harness
as chairman of the Defence Liaison Committee and chairman of the Anti-Waste
Committee. He was instrumental in resuscitating the S.P.C.A., and in recognition of
his services and his love for animals, he was made a life member of the society.
30 Saving Brockman from a Lion

The amazing story of how Dan Morkel 1869 – 1903 saved Ernest Brockman from a man–eating lion are documented in a newspaper extract\(^\text{178}\) and in Brockman’s own words, ‘the most appalling true narrative on record’ in *The Wide World Magazine* of 1898\(^\text{179}\).

Dan Morkel (younger brother of P.A.), and Ernest Brockman, together with about 200 Africans were working to construct Rhodes’ pet scheme, the ‘Cape to Cairo’ telegraph. Brockman had formerly served with the Chartered Company as postmaster and telegraphist in Mashonaland. Dan was knowledgeable about working and surviving in the remote and wild part of Africa where they were working. Three work parties were involved. The first cleared the forest along the route where the wire was to be laid, the next dug holes for the poles, and the third section fixed the poles upright and placed the insulators in position. Brockman was with the last group and his duty was to test the wire after the ordinary work of the day was finalised. Dan saw that proper communication was maintained with their base at Blantyre, so that they could order up stores as required. Their object was to take the wire right up to Lake Tanganyika.

On the fateful night the group was camped in a clearing about 30 miles from Kota Kota. There was a primitive hut for each white and one for storage. The huts were about 10 feet in diameter and constructed of stout poles about 2 to 3 feet apart filled in with matting woven out of strips of bamboo.

\[\text{===============================}\]
\[\text{... when he woke up became conscious of something moving backwards and forwards, and up and down underneath his bed. A loud, long, and indescribable sniff, sniff, broke the stillness of the night. He instantly realized that it could only be a lion.}\]
\[\text{===============================}\]
THE BED stood close to the wall, opposite the door, which was merely a small opening blocked at night with grass and bamboo. The bed had a mattress which was laid on top of bamboo netting. Brockman’s Lee Metford gun stood leaning against a sugar barrel.

Brockman was asleep when he woke up and became conscious of something moving backwards and forwards, and up and down underneath his bed. A loud, long, and indescribable *sniff, sniff,* broke the stillness of the night. He tells:

‘I instantly realized that it could only be a lion. After a moment or two I became aware that the lion had got out from under the bed, and was sniffing his way along the edge, perhaps a little puzzled by the mosquito curtains. Instinctively, yet as noiselessly as possible I huddled up all the pillows and bedclothes up over my head and face. The lion, with a horrible purr, purr, grabbed me by the right shoulder, and dragged me out on to the floor, bedclothes and all. He commenced to suck the blood that streamed down my neck and chest, and every time I moved he bit more savagely. As he raised his knees to get into a crouching, protective position, the lion gave me a little pat with his paws which nearly broke my leg, and inflicted a dreadful wound. Then he dropped me out of his mouth, placed one proud and
massive paw on my chest, and gave one, two, three, four terrific roars of triumph and defiance. By then the Africans were aware what was happening and were firing off their guns like mad'.

Dan Morkel was awakened at the first roar, got out of bed, put on his trousers and hat, and then sallied forth with his rifle, thinking that the lion must be very close, judging from the loudness of the roar he heard. He made his way, or rather felt his way, over to Brockman’s hut, wondering why he had not come out to meet him. He was guided partly by the excited cries of the natives, and partly by the loud purrs of the frightful brute. After he discovered that the lion was inside the hut with Brockman, he fired several shots through the roof to frighten him out, but the lion stayed inside roaring all the time.

All this time there was not a sound from
Brockman, and Morkel could not make out what he was doing, and it was too dangerous to fire into the hut for fear of hitting Brockman. All of a sudden Brockman shouted: ‘For God’s sake save my life. He has got hold of me’. Dan rushed to the door of the hut with a torch of burning grass in one hand and his gun in the other. He kicked open the door, stepped a few yards back, and threw the torch to see where to fire. The lion then rushed out dragging Brockman along. He fired, and hit the lion just below the eye, which dropped him. Brockman dropped at the same time, jumped up, ran 10 yards and fell.

The lion was making a tremendous noise in his death agony. The natives then shouted ‘Nkango atawa’ (the lion is running away). Dan called out for a light but they all shouted ‘Kjopa ambira’ (we are very frightened). He wanted to give the lion another shot, but the cartridge stuck, so he rushed up to him and hit him across the nose, which settled him. He broke his gun in two. The lion was an enormous gaunt brute, over 10 ft. in length, and with a luxuriant tawny mane that imparted to him a majestic appearance. The skull, and part of the claw, made into a pendant survives with a descendant of Brockman, Jacqueline Wetselaar.180.
Brockman was bleeding dreadfully all the time, and all Dan could do was to put him in a warm bath, to relieve the pain.

**Brockman relates:**

‘Well, the moment the brute retreated from me, I actually got up on to my legs and ran for twenty or thirty yards! Then I fell like a stone to the earth, and I remember no more until the next day, when I found myself in a warm bath, that had been prepared by Morkel to wash my wounds — of which I had one-and-twenty! My poor friend told me that my naked body presented so shocking, so revolting a spectacle, my hands, groins, and thighs being chewed bloodless, like paper pulp, that he nearly lost his reason, and became delirious. All that night, however, my heroic companion sat by my bedside until daybreak, and well do I remember that with awakened consciousness came the first poignant shock of agony from my wounds. For many days and nights I suffered the torments of the accursed, taking not one atom of solid food, but only enormous draughts of brandy and champagne.

At this stage I was hundreds of miles from civilization, and even the nearest doctor was far away from this remote spot. Every one of my wounds mortified — no doubt due to the poisonous filth that encrusted the man-eater’s fangs. As I was growing rapidly more and more feverish, Morkel resolved to send me by lake steamer to Bandawe, where I would be attended by Dr. Prentice of the Livingstone Mission at that place. This steamer was due to make its monthly call the following day at Domara, only a few miles from our camp. A messenger was therefore sent to intercept the captain, and ask him to make a call a little further down the lake so that I might be put on board. I was wrapped in blankets and laid on a plank, which in turn was placed transversely on a canoe. Just after we had started for the steamer, however, quite a ‘sea’ arose on the lake and the plank shifted to one side, so that if I had not been grabbed by one of the men in the boat, I should have drowned!

It took a day and a half to reach Bandawe, the weather being boisterous, and the water very choppy. A little hut was rigged for me on the deck, but I had a shocking time of it. When Dr. Prentice saw me at the mission station he told me that my case was utterly hopeless. My right leg, I was told, would have to go, but owing to my condition, it was deemed inadvisable to amputate it immediately on my arrival.

---

Dan wanted to give the lion another shot, but the cartridge stuck, so he rushed up to him and hit him across the nose, which settled him. He broke his gun in two.

---

MORKEL
There was no chloroform at the mission and the ether had gone wrong through the climate, and therefore would not act.

Thus I had to lie, conscious and screaming, in agony, while the doctor was cutting and carving away the mortified flesh from all parts of my tortured body. It is perfectly clear that my day had not come, for all the bites in the thigh had missed the artery by about an eight of an inch.

And night after night I went through the whole fearful business again. Ghastly, horrible nightmares took possession of me, and I would have gone raving mad were it not for the powerful opiates that were administered. A slamming door, the sudden appearance of a man before me, anything and everything, threw me into a perfect agony of terror, pitiful to witness. My mind and reason were all but gone, and I, who had been a giant of strength, was like a timid little child, a mere wreck of a man in mind and body.

The British South African Company have been very kind to me. I believe mine is the only case on record of a man-eater taking a white man out of his bed at night. I still hobble about on sticks, and I often wake up in a cold perspiration, thinking I can hear the soul destroying sniff, sniff of the man–eating lion beneath my bed.”

DESCENDANTS OF C6 DANIEL JOHANNES MORKEL OF ONVERWACHT

Skull and Claw (set in a pendant) of the Lion that attacked Ernest Brockman

Jean Wetselaar, née Brockman
31 Lost in the Bush & Licked in the Face by a Lion

A story about a man losing his mind when lost for days in the bush and rescued by a Morkel. At a later stage Morkel lies sick with fever while his cheek is licked away by a lion.

IN HIS biography, Dr Hans Sauer, collaborator with Cecil John Rhodes, writes about a Morkel he knew. Unfortunately his identity is unknown.

On the Umzingwani River we found some transport wagons under the conduct of Morkel, whose father was a well-known coach proprietor and transport rider in Griqualand and the Transvaal. Morkel had with him several men travelling as passengers, amongst them an Afrikander from the old Colony, to whom the vast stretches of the Bushveld were new and unknown. One afternoon this youth left the camp armed with a shotgun and three cartridges. He had set out to shoot some guinea fowl or a small buck for the pot. Morkel and his friend heard three shots fired at about a mile distant from the camp and concluded that the hunter had bagged something and would presently turn up at the camp.

As the afternoon wore away and the short African twilight set in they began to feel uneasy at the absence of their companion, and when night fell they fired off guns at regular intervals in order to give the missing man some indication of the position of the camp. They also lighted large wood fires in the hope that the glow from these would catch the eye of the man lost in the bush. It was all in vain. The missing man did not return, and as lions were not uncommon, they came to the conclusion that the worst had happened.

A search continued for considerably more

The man, however, was now nothing but a gibbering idiot, his clothes were torn to ribbons by the wait-a-bit thorn-bushes, and his fingers, with which he had dug up roots to eat were bleeding and wounded... Morkel had to overpower him and tie his hands before he could get him back to the wagons.
than a week, and all hope of finding the lost man had almost been given up, when Morkel riding out in a last attempt, suddenly saw a ragged figure running through the bush. He rode down the fugitive, who, on the near approach of Morkel, dived underground into an aardvark hole. After much difficulty Morkel succeeded in extricating his lost passenger. The man, however, was now nothing but a gibbering idiot; his clothes were torn to ribbons by the wait-a-bit thornbushes, and his fingers, with which he had dug up roots to eat were bleeding and wounded. He could not speak and made gibbering noises like an ape. Morkel had to overpower him and tie his hands before he could get him back to the wagons.

The sick man was sent on, under guard, to Fort Victoria by the weekly coach which worked between Mafeking and Salisbury. It took more than three months for him to recover his sanity and general health. He acted as postmaster of Umtali for years after his recovery.

Licked in the Face by a Lion

DR SAUER continues:
‘Morkel himself, a year or two after, was the victim of a terrible adventure. With a friend he had gone on a prospecting expedition in the Zambesi Valley, where they established a camp from which they operated. As a protection against lions they had built a large hut or room with stout wooden poles lashed together, the roof being thatched with grass. The hut contained two stretched beds also built of wooden poles with cross piece and covered with cut grass serving as mattresses. As often happened in those days, both Morkel and his companion were stricken down with malaria, and were so ill that they were confined to the hut under care of their native servant. They were now so weak that neither of them were capable of movement, and one night a lion entered and began licking the exposed side of Morkel’s face. He soon became aware of this licking but could do nothing to protect himself. Fortunately his companion woke up, saw the lion and shouted at the native. The boy heard the shout, leapt up, and taking a burning log entered the hut and thrust the torch into the lion’s mane. This courageous act put an end to the scene, as the lion bolted without delay. On examining his master, the boy found that the lion has almost entirely licked away one side of this face. Both Morkel and his friend recovered, but Morkel was terribly disfigured for life.’
Morkels in the Anglo-Boer War

Morkels fought on both sides of the Anglo-Boer War. Some, living in the British controlled Cape Province were in the British military in Bechuanaland and Mashonaland during the 1890s. When the ABW broke out, they continued to serve in the British forces. Others lived in the Boer Republics and went on Commando for the Boer side.

Rome Morkels

e2 ROELOF ABRAHAM Morkel farmed at Rome and was the second son of d9 Willem Morkel and Isabella Zeederberg of Morgenster. He was named after his maternal grandfather, R.A. Zeederberg and married Hendrina du Plessis with thirteen children of whom ten reached maturity. Seven remained unmarried.

Three sons, f2 Willem, f6 Ralph and f9 John served in armed forces, in Bechuanaland (Botswana), Mashonaland (Zimbabwe) and later during the Anglo-Boer War of 1899 – 1902, where the brothers fought on opposite sides. Willem served with the Boer Commandos. Ralph and John were longstanding members of the British Colonial forces and when the war broke out, served with the British troops.

f2 Willem Morkel

IN 1890, at the age of 30, f2 Willem Morkel 1860 – 1949 was a Bechuana Scout under Sir Frederick Carrington in the war against the Korannas. In 1891 he went to Johannesburg where he met his future wife, Frederika Potgieter, an eighteen year old school teacher from Humansdorp, Cape. He became an overseer for the Symington Coach Services, operating between Johannesburg and Natal. By 1898 he was sanitary inspector in the Mine Sanitary Department. When the Anglo-Boer War broke out, he left early January 1900 for the front where he joined the Boer forces under General Gravett of Germiston. He left his wife and a baby daughter behind in Johannesburg. He fought in the battles at Groot Rivier and Rensburg Siding, serving under General Gravett, who fell later in action.
Some Morkels who served during the
Anglo-Boer War of 1899 – 1902

I compiled the following list from the sources I have.
They are the ones we know of — there would have been others as well.

On the British side:

f6 Sgt. Roelof Abraham (Ralph) Morkel 1867 – 1932
f9 Jan Frederik Munnik (John) Morkel *1872
f2 Carolus Frederik Morkel 1870 – 1924

On the Boer side:

f2 Willem Morkel 1860 – 1949 POW India
f7 Daniel Gustavus Morkel 1876 – 1947 POW Bermuda
f5 Michiel Jurgens Freislich Morkel *1877 killed at Tugela River 1900
f7 Roelof Abraham (Ralph) Morkel 1873 – 1926 (Lt. Col during WW I)

Four brothers, sons of Willem (Japie) Morkel & J.H. Maritz:

g2 Hendrik Johannes (Harry) Morkel *1876
g3 Gerhardus Maritz Morkel 1878 – 1955
g4 William Somerset (Sommie) Morkel 1879 – 1921 POW St Helena

g5 Stephanus Kimberley (Steve) Morkel *1881

Vryburg Rebels:

Vryburg on the border of the Transvaal was part of the British Cape Colony. Formerly The Republic of Stellaland, the British were particularly vigilant.

f5 Antonie Charles Morkel *1863 was a journalist/printer with Boer sympathies. He was interned as a rebel in 1900 and is listed as ‘an absconded rebel on bail’ in 1902.

f6 Herman Philip Ernst Morkel * 1864 was also listed ‘as an absconded rebel’. He was the brother of Antonie Charles Morkel.
At BronkhorstSpruit under General Boshoff f3 Willem failed to hear the order to retreat when the commando was attacked by superior British forces. He had a British officer as prisoner of war with him, and inadvertently allowed him to retain his revolver. Morkel made a dash for a nearby Kopje, and ordered the prisoner to follow him. Instead, the fellow drew out his revolver and shot Willem Morkel in the back, and made good his escape. The bullet passed under his shoulder, penetrated his chest and then into the ground. Fortunately his brother-in-law who had ridden back to rescue him, hauled him upon his horse and rode to safety.

He survived his wound, and was later taken prisoner at Magaliesberg in early 1902 and sent to Ladysmith, Natal. From there he was sent to India where he was held for thirteen months. During the summer season the Boer prisoners were sent to the Himalayas to escape the devastating heat. He was finally repatriated to South Africa and spent most of his active life in transport.

His life ended on a rather tragic note. He was knocked down and killed by a trolley bus at Varney’s Corner, Green Point on 27 January 1949, aged 84 years. It appears that he was safely across the road, but turned back to fetch his dog which strayed from his side. Being deaf, he failed to hear the bus.

Sgt Ralph and John Morkel

f6 ROELOF (RALPH) Abraham Zeederberg Morkel 1867 – 1932 served for several years in the Bechuanaland Border Police and Rhodesia military. During the Anglo-Boer War he and his brother John (Jan Frederik Munnik Morkel *1872) served with the British forces in the Cape Colony.

British war medal enthusiast, Peter Weedon 183 found a medal awarded to Sgt Ralph Morkel, and the following are extracts from information he provided of Ralph’s military activities as prepared for The British Medals Forum184.

R A Morkel was a member of the Bechuanaland Border Police before he joined the British South Africa Company Police in December 1889. Consequently he was one of the 174 men of the British South Africa Company Police who escorted
the Pioneer Column from Bechuanaland into Mashonaland on a 400 mile march in 1890. They formed up to see the Union flag raised in what was to become Salisbury, Rhodesia, on 13 September 1890. Morkel was discharged in 1891 and later that year operated the post office sited at the Causeway in Salisbury.

Ralph enrolled in the Mashonaland Horse Volunteers December 1891. This volunteer unit replaced the British South Africa Company Police. Under the command of major Forbes it was distributed as follows: Salisbury, 380 men; Victoria, 150 men and detachments at Mazoe, Hartley Hill and Manica. The artillery troop under the command of captain Lendy consisted of 44 officers and men and was stationed at Salisbury. In emergencies this unit could be supplemented by a burgher force of some 1,500 men who were liable for service in time of war.

Having left the MHV, Morkel signed up again, this time to B Troop of the Rhodesia Horse Volunteers, regimental number 61, on 29/5/95. The unit was raised in April 1895 and disbanded on the 25th March 1896. During the Mashona Rebellion of 1896 he rejoined the colours as a sergeant in the Umtali Volunteer Corps, and received a medal in 1896. On 25 June two Mounted Infantry companies under the command of colonel Edwin AH Alderson of the Royal West Kent Regiment had arrived in Beira, originally destined for Matabeleland. These companies were diverted to the Mashonaland crisis where they pursued a 'commando' styled mounted campaign against rebel strongholds, relieving them of their grain and cattle.
Alderson's Mounted Infantry initiative was described as 'highly mobile and pugnacious' comprising brisk scorched earth forays intent on destroying pockets of rebel resistance and capturing their grain supplies and livestock, obviously aimed at bringing their logistical support structure crashing down.

Along with his brother John, Ralph Morkel enlisted in the Western Province Mounted Rifles during the Boer War. He attested in Cape Town on 12/01/1901 (or Malmesbury 20/05/1901), giving his occupation as a farmer, regimental number 418. He rose to become quarter master sergeant in (MacDonald’s) Squadron, Cape Colonial Forces. John’s enlisted in Clanwilliam with regimental number 423, and was posted to J Squadron WPMR.

When the second invasion of Cape Colony took place in December 1900 several new bodies of volunteers or irregulars were raised at Cape Town, among others the Western Province Mounted Rifles. As soon as a squadron was ready it took to the field, because the enemy in the first week of January 1901 had reached within a day's ride of Cape Town. During January and February the corps was constantly in action. In a telegram from Clanwilliam, dated 31st January, the press association correspondent remarked that a detachment under Lieutenant Hellawell had driven 150 Boers from the Pakhuis Pass.

Throughout 1901 and 1902 the corps did an immense amount of arduous work in the extreme south-west of the Colony. They were often far from support and in a district much favoured by the enemy, and one almost impossible for regular troops.

One of the most notable things done in the western district was the successful defence of Tontelbosch Kolk, the Boer force in the neighbourhood. The garrison, which was partly composed of men of this corps, made use of their cover most expertly, and during the siege the WPMR only lost 2 killed and 3 wounded.

Ralph Morkel’s last known military service was as a lieutenant in the Central South African Railway Volunteers c1908. He remained unmarried and died on 10/02/1932.
Lt. Col. Ralph Morkel

*f*7 RALPH (ROELOF Abraham Zeederberg) Morkel (1873 – 1926), is a cousin of Sgt Ralph above and the 7th son of *el* Daniel Johannes Morkel. He was born on Morgenster, moved to the Transvaal and worked for his grandmother’s family, the Zeederbergs, in their mail coach business. When the Anglo-Boer War started in 1899, he joined a Boer commando which served first with General Snyman and then with general Piet Cronje. In the middle of the fighting he married Grace Gillitt of Emberton, Natal.

When peace was restored in 1902, he joined the cartage department of what then was called Central African Railways, covering the Transvaal and Orange River Colonies. He was first stationed at Pretoria and in 1906 moved to Krugersdorp, where he was elected president of the West Rand Rugby Club due to his prowess in that game. During the first World War he served as transport officer in the South West Africa (Namibia) and East African campaigns and was appointed to the rank of Lieutenant Colonel 190.

Cpt. Carolus and Michiel Morkel

TWO BROTHERS *f*2 Carolus Frederick Morkel and *f*5 Michiel Jurgens Freislich Morkel fought on both sides during the Anglo Boer War. They were grandsons of *d*7 Hendrik Johannes Morkel and Esther Elizabeth Morkel of Onverwacht.

*f*2 Carolus Morkel went to school at Bishops in Cape Town and in December 1888, aged 18 years, went to the Transvaal Goldfields. Two years later he joined the Pioneer Column in 1890. When the first Matabele War broke out in 1892 he was appointed a sergeant, and when the rebellion followed in 1896, rose to commissioned rank. He qualified as a mining engineer and played rugby for the Kimberley Team, including against the first British touring team.

During the Anglo-Boer War he joined the Witwatersrand Rifles and became officer in charge of transport, with the rank captain. He was awarded the Queen’s war medal in addition to two Matabele war medals. Carolus Morkel belonged to the original Diggers Football (rugby) Club in Johannesburg in the 1880’s and served on its first committee 191. He was married to Bessie Southall. Their son, *g*3 Philip William Morkel *1907 founded the Phil Morkel chain of furniture stores, the forerunner of the Morkels retail chain. P.W. Morkel self published *The Morks, Family History and Genealogy* in 1961, the source of much of the material in our book.
Michiel Jurgens Freislich Morkel 1870 – 1900, unmarried, joined the Boer forces and was unfortunately killed in action at the battle of Tugela River.

Family Lines for Carolus and Michiel Jurgens Morkel

c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel 1764 – 1825 x Maria Dorothea Louw (Onverwacht)
d7 Hendrik Johannes Morkel 1798 – 1859 xx Esther Elizabeth Morkel (Onverwacht)
e13 Philip Hendrik Johannes Morkel 1841 – 1910 x Maria Goudrica Freislich
f2 Carolus Frederick Morkel 1870 – 1924 x Bessie Hesketh Rhyley Southall (British Forces)
g3 Philip William Morkel *1907 (Businessman and author of Family History)
f5 Michiel Jurgens Freislich Morkel 1877 – 1900 (Boer Forces)

Sommie and brothers

FOUR BROTHERS, sons of Willem (Japie) Morkel, butcher in Johannesburg and Johanna Helena Maritz (see Chapter 15) fought at various stages on the Boer side. Sommie Morkel fought under General Ben Viljoen at the siege of Ladysmith and later at Colenso under General Louis Botha. He accompanied General de la Rey on his trek from Ladysmith to Paardeberg, but was captured by the British at Abrahams Kraal on March 10, 1900. He spent the remaining two and a half years of the war in a prison camp on St Helena. After the war Sommie excelled in rugby and became a rugby Springbok.

Family Lines for Sommie Morkel and his brothers.

c5 Willem Morkel (Voorburg) x A.M. Wium
d2 Willem Morkel x E.E. Louw
e2 Hendrik J. Morkel x G.A. Louw
f6 Willem (Japie) Morkel x J.H. Maritz
  g2 Hendrik Johannes (Harry) Morkel *1876
  g3 Gerhardus Maritz Morkel *1878
  g4 Springbok William Somerset (Sommie) Morkel *1879
  g5 Stephanus Kimberley (Steve) Morkel *1881

The youngest two sons, Dougie, later a rugby Springbok, and John were too young to participate in the war.
204 Rand Pioneer’s Certificate
awarded to Carolus Frederick Morkel.
He arrived on the Gold Fields in December 1888.

P.W. Morkel, Family history, p47a.
Part 5

Descendants of Hercules Morkel

of Welgelegen

33  Hercules Morkel    207
34  The Overberg Farms 209
35. Antonie Charles Morkel 211
36  Beaufort West Morkels  219
37  Samuel and Dolphina Morkel and Family  223
38  Margaret Lodewyk  229
39  I. D. Morkel Church Founder  233
Descendants of Hercules Morkel

```
a1 Philip Morkel x Catharina Pasman

b4 Willem Morkel x H.C.P. Malan

c7 Hercules Morkel 1767 – 1808 x Helena Munnik 1772 – 1818
   Welgelegen

   d3 Willem Morkel
      1795 – 1851
      x J.E.A. Dreijer
      1772 – 1818
      Brakfontein,
      Rivier Zondereind
      Six adult children

   d4 Hercules Morkel
      1798 – 1831
      x G.W. de Vos
      Welgelegen
      One adult son

   d5 Gerhardus Morkel
      1799 – 1826 x J.F.
      Brand
      Swellendam
      One son

   d8 Philip Hendrik
      Morkel 1804 – 1837
      x Hester Loedolff
      Worcester
      One son

   e1 Hercules Morkel
      e2 Johannes Augustus
      Morkel 1823 – 1877 x
      C.C. Marais
      e3 Elizabeth J. Morkel
      e4 Helena C. Morkel
      e6 Christina J. Morkel
      e7 Jacoba E. Morkel
      e8 Willem Lodewyk
      Morkel 1843 – 1898 x
      M.B.Le Roux
      Overberg Farms

   e1 Wouter Ryk Dirk
      Morkel 1821 – 1852
      x Maria C.J. de Wit
      Somerset West

   e1 Hercules Adriaan
      Morkel 1823 – 1871
      x÷ C.A. Londt
      f1 Hendrik G. Morkel
      f2 Charlotte A.M.
      Morkel
      & Flora Simon
      5 children
      Nelspoort
      Beaufort West Morkels

   e1 Philip Hendrik
      Morkel 1835 – 1888 x
      J.H. Dempers
      Worcester
      6 children

      Various, locations
      including Worcester,
      Somerset West Strand,
      & Cape Town.

   f5 Antonie Charles
      Morkel
      g2 Philip Hendrik
      Morkel

   h6 Carle Anton Morkel

   Rugby Springbok Henry
   Morkel
```
Compared to his brothers, comparatively little is recorded about Hercules Morkel. He was 21 when his father Willem died in 1788. He married Helena Munnik two years later in 1790 and farmed at Welgelegen, which later became Erin Vale. They had eight children of whom six reached adulthood. He died relatively young at the age of 41 in 1808.

VALUATIONS OF farms inherited by the brothers are as follows (guilders f):
- c4 Philip Hendrik: Ezelsjacht valued at f 7,000
- c5 Willem: Voorburg and Mostertsbaai Strand valued at f 15,000
- c6 Daniel Johannes: Onverwacht and Zeemans Rust valued at f 15,000
- c7 Hercules: Brakkefontein valued at f 6,000

Hercules did not do well out his father’s will, and the reality was even worse than the valuations show. Daniel did the best. Granted he had to look after his mother, sister and younger brother (Hercules) initially, but he got a well established farm with a large house (and probably a second one as well) plus a large farmyard with outbuildings.

Willem received the large Voorburg and Mostertsbaai Strand properties and part of the deal was that a house and farm buildings would be built. Philip Hendrik and Hercules inherited the pastoral farms Ezelsjacht and Brakfontein, on the far side of the mountains along the Rivier Zondereind. The valuations reflected their lesser worth compared to the Hottentots Holland properties of Daniel and Willem. In practice they were worth even less, being useful at that time only for cattle and sheep, because transporting crops or wine over the steep mountain pass was not feasible. Brakfontein did not even have a house or proper farm buildings. Philip Hendrik however, already owned and farmed Rome, a portion of the old farm, and therefore was not disadvantaged. There were no compensating assets for Hercules.
Hercules acquired a farm, Welgelegen close to Laaste Gift (Lourensford) in the Hottentots Holland and did not live at Brakfontein over the mountains. Compared to the other farms however, it was relatively small and unlikely as profitable as the others.

Apart from the Chapter by Carl Anton Morkel and Beaufort West branch contributed by Margaret Thebus, there is little documented about this branch of the family and it is the largest gap and defect of our book. Information for the rest of this branch will be gladly published on our website.

Hercules and Helena Munnik had four sons to carry on the Morkel name. The oldest son d3 Willem farmed at Brakfontein, renamed it Spes Bona and became the progenitor of many extended families in the Caledon/Villiersdorp region. Uitkyk along the Rivier Sonderend in Greyton/Caledon was a key farm for this branch of the family. The second son d4 Hercules stayed on Welgelegen and died young (32). He married Geertruida Woutrina de Vos on 11 June 1820, the first wedding in the new church of Somerset West. Third son d5 Gerhardus, had one son, Hercules Adriaan, the progenitor of the Beaufort West Morks. d5 Gerhardus died young (26) in Swellendam, and the fourth d8 Philip Hendrik, who also died young (32) was the progenitor of families in Worcester, Hottentots Holland and the Cape.

A great great grandson of d3 Willem Morkel and J.E.A. Dreier was h3 Bill (William Aron) Morkel. He was born in 1928 in Middelburg, and migrated to Kenya where he established the largest mango and cashew nut farm in the colony. He became a professional big game hunter operating mainly in central Africa, ranging from Kenya to Botswana. He became active in conservation and protection of wildlife, and subsequently wrote a book on professional hunting in Africa. Bill and his brother h4 Paul Albert Roos Morkel participated on Paul’s yacht Arion in 1971 in the first race from Cape Town to Rio de Janeiro.
34 The Overberg Farms

c7 Hercules inherited Brakfontein along the Rivierzondereind in the Overberg (lit. over the mountain). His oldest son d3 Willem farmed there, while Hercules himself remained in Somerset West on Welgelegen. Over time, Willem’s descendants acquired a range of farms in that area, comprising modern Caledon, Greyton, Villiersdorp and Riviersonderend, and further afield in Riversdale and Worcester. Our source of information, the genealogy of P.W. Morkel\textsuperscript{193}, is unlikely to be complete, and there could have been more Morkel farms in the Overberg.

d3 Willem Morkel (1795 – 1851) x Jacoba Elizabeth Arnoldina Dreijer (1772 – 1818)  
Brakfontein (Spes Bona), Rivierzondereind.  

e2 Johannes Dreier Morkel (1823 – 1877) x Catharina Cornelia Marais  
Brakfontein, later Uitkyk

f2 Willem Aron Morkel *1851 x Helena Catharina Roos  
Varsfontein Caledon

f8 Johannes Dreier Morkel (1864 - 1945) x Catharina Maria Geertruida Pretorius  
Schoongezicht, Villiersdorp

g2 Jacobus Petrus Morkel *1892 Daniellina Petronella du Toit,  
Witdraai, Caledon

g3 Willem Morkel *1893 x Susara Susanna Geldenhuis  
Heuningvlakte, Villiersdorp

f11 Hercules Morkel (1870 - 1927) x Elizabeth Margaretha du Toit  
Uitkyk, Caledon

g5 Daniel Francois Morkel *1901 x Margaretha Johanna Viljoen  
Uitkyk Caledon

g8 Stephanus Petrus Morkel *1907 x Susanna Johanna Viljoen,  
Moordkuil, Worcester district

g10 Josias Johannes Morkel *1911 x Catharina Johanna Pretorius  
Uitkyk Caledon
DESCENDANTS OF c7 HERCULES MORKEL

e8 Willem Lodewyk Morkel (1843 – 1898) x M.B.Le Roux

  Hopefield, Caledon

f1 Willem Morkel (1866 – 1919) x Elizabeth Adriana Malan.

  Boontjeskraal, Caledon.

g2 Willem Lodewyk Morkel (1891 – 1942) x Petronella Paulina van der Merwe

  Het Fortuin, Villiersdorp.

h4 Abraham Daniel van der Merwe Morkel *1932 x Rina Mong,

  Fortuin, Elgin/Grabouw

g5 Gabriel Stephanus Morkel *1898 x Susanna du Toit

  Buffeljachtsrivier, Riversdale

f9 Wouter de Vos Morkel (1884 – 1936) x Margaretha Groenewald.

  Klein Zandfontein. Caledon district

---

Map of the Overberg

The Overberg had good farmland on gentle rolling hills beyond the mountains surrounding Somerset West. The river (Riversonderend) hugs the mountains bordering the north of the area, and flows east (rather than south to the sea). For the early explorers it was endless, hence the name, river-without-end.

I am unable to locate the specific Morkel farms.

Googlemaps
Antonie Charles Morkel

By i3 Carl Anton Morkel

f5 Antonie Charles Morkel 1863 – 1926, married to Alida Maria Esterhuizen, was a journalist and owned a printing press in Vryburg. Due to his anti-British sentiments he was jailed during the Anglo-Boer War and lost the press. After the war he returned to the Cape and settled in Somerset West where he also owned a small farm in Sir Lowry’s Pass. He worked in the company newspaper of African Explosives and Industries, (De Beers) in The Strand.

f5 Antonie Charles Morkel and Family ca 1920
Back: g8 Katie, g3 Jessie, g4 Herman, g5 Willie, g1 Hannie, g7 Boet (Antonie Charles), g6 Nettie
Front: Pieter du Toit (Jessie’s husband) Ouma Alida Maria (née Esterhuizen) Baby (Anna), Oupa Antonie Charles, Flippie Morkel (Hannie’s husband). Missing from the photo: g2 Philip Hendrik

Family photo:
VRYBURG, FORMERLY the Republic of Stellaland, on the border between the Cape Colony and Transvaal was annexed by the British in 1884. It remained a sensitive spot for the British and they would have had little tolerance for a journalist owning a press, and sympathetic to the Boer cause. When the Anglo-Boer War broke out in 1899, f5 Antonie Charles (35), and his brother f6 Herman Philip (34) were interned as rebels. In 1900 he was on bail as an absconded rebel, while Herman was also labelled an absconded rebel.

MORKEL, Anthoni Charles. Vryburg, but now at Somerset West, Stellenbosch district. Registered in the Vryburg Electoral Division as Voter 231 in Ward 1 in 1899 Vryburg Voters Roll. Printer; householder. Joined between 20-10-1899 and 30-4-1900. His name appeared as an absconded rebel in 1900. On bail. Tried under The Indemnity and Special Tribunals Act of 1900 in default on 7-10-1902 case no 188. Disqualified from voting until 7-10-1907. Class 2 rebel. [AG2117; AG2097 Part 1; AG2109; AG3500 VR]

MORKEL, Herman Philip E. Vryburg, but now at Somersset West, Stellenbosch district. Registered in the Vryburg Electoral Division as Voter 230 in Ward 1 in 1899 Vryburg Voters Roll. Carpenter; householder. Joined between 20-10-1899 and 30-4-1900. His name appeared as an absconded rebel in 1900. Tried under The Indemnity and Special Tribunals Act of 1900 in default on 1-10-1902 case no 41. Disqualified from voting until 1-10-1907. Class 2 rebel. [AG2117; AG2097 Part 1; AG2109; AG3500 VR]

c7 Hercules Morkel *1767 x Helena Munnik
d7 Philip Hendrik Morkel *1804 x Hester Loedolff
e1 Philip Hendrik Morkel *1835 x Johanna Hermina Dempers
f5 Antonie Charles Morkel *1863, x Alida Maria Esterhuizen
   g1 Johanna (Hannie) Hermina Dempers Morkel*1891 Richmond, Cape x Philip Hendrik Morkel,
      xx Ernst Johannes Retief, xxx Jacobus van der Merwe, xxxx Isaac Stephanus Steyn
   g2 Philip Henry Morkel *1892 Klerksdorp x Hillegonda Hendrika Kringe
   g3 Josina (Jessie) Morkel *1894 Vryburg x Pieter du Toit, xx Herbet Vigne, xxx David Jacob du
      Toit
   g4 Hermanus (Herman) Phillipus Ernst Morkel *1897 x Sarah Laurentia Lochner
   g5 William (Willy) Josias Sterrenberg Morkel *1899 Vryburg x Constantia (Connie) W. Loubser
   g6 Alida (Nettie) Maria Morkel *1901 Wynberg, Cape Town x Hendrik Jacobs
   g7 Antonie Charles *1903 Strand. Died young
   g8 Catharina (Katie) Johanna Geertruida Morkel *1905, Strand x Pieter Josua Cellier Viljoen
   g9 Antonie (Boet) Charles Morkel *1907 Strand x Vera Logie
   g10 Anna (Baby) Francina Morkel *1912, Strand x Izaak Stephen Middleton
As Antonie and Alida’s children grew up, they all settled around The Strand Somerset West, with the exception of g2 Philippus Hendrik who joined the S.A. Railways. g1 Hannie married her cousin Flippie Morkel (brother of Springbok rugby player Henry Morkel). He had a petrol station in Somerset West. g3 Jessie lived in Somerset West. g4 Herman and g5 Willie worked at De Beers (AE & CI). Willie’s wife Connie ran a tea room called Uncle Willy’s at Firgrove alongside the National Road to Cape Town and prime minister Dr D.F. Malan was known to drive through for lunch there. g6 Nettie was married to Hendrik Jacobs who had a butchery in Strand. g8 Katie lived in the Strand. g9 Boet (Antonie Charles) was a motor mechanic and had a workshop next to his mothers house in Somerset West. g10 Baby (Anna Francina) lived in Somerset West where her husband was an inspector of schools.

Antonie Charles died in The Strand in 1926 as was buried at the old historic church at Somerset West. His wife Alida moved to the Transvaal where she died at Primrose in 1942.

**g2 Philippus Hendrik (Philip Henry) Morkel**

SOON AFTER g2 Philip Henry was born in Klerksdorp, his parents Antonie Charles and Alida moved to Vryburg. Philip Henry was about ten when the family moved again, to The Strand, where he grew up. He joined the South African Railways and progressed to stationmaster. He married Hillegonda Hendrika Krige of the Paarl and they had eight children of whom seven grew up. The children were born at various railway stations in the Cape: Faure 1922, De Put (north of De Aar) in 1923, Three Sisters in 1926, Kotjeskolk in 1924 and Protem (near Bredasdorp) on 1928. Philip Henry died young, aged 45 in 1937, leaving his widow with six children ranging from a year to 15 years having to survive on very little.

**h5 Thelma Morkel**, who married Brian Glynn relates:

Our father (Philip Hendrik Morkel) was a station master and we moved around a lot. He died at a young age leaving my mother Rita (Hillegonda Hendrika) behind with 6 children. My mother received no Railway pension and had to survive on a lump sum that she invested (life insurance?). The South African Railways had orphanages for the children of railway employees. Me (Thelma), my sister Valerie and my brother Anton were sent to the ‘Homes’ as they were called. Babs (Willem Adolph Krige Morkel) was fourteen at the time and too old to go to the ‘Homes’ while my youngest
brother Philip was too young. Me and Valerie were sent to Bloemfontein and Anton was sent to Natal. The ‘Homes’ were well run and the children went to good schools in the area. My mother moved to Rosebank in Cape Town. We were allowed to go home to our mother once a year. I was in Bloemfontein for one year before being transferred to a ‘Home’ in Cape Town. This was convenient and I saw my mother much more. Valerie joined me there a year later. My mother felt sorry for Anton and brought him home to live with her in Rosebank where he attended Rondebosch Boys School. I left school to work for the Railway Social Services Department. I enjoyed my work but became an air hostess when the opportunity arose. There I met my husband Brian.

\[\text{Children of } g2 \text{ Philip Hendrik and Rita Morkel} \]
Back: \(h2\) Willem Adolph Krige, \(h8\) Philip, \(h6\) Carle Anton
Front: \(h4\) Valerie, \(h7\) Lois, \(h5\) Thelma

\[g2 \text{ Philip Hendrik Morkel & Rita} \]
(Hillegonda Hendrika Krige)
Wedding photo, 27 June 1923

\[h6 \text{ Carle Anton Morkel relates:} \]
I HAD a wonderful art teacher in primary school that taught me the art of water colour painting. I was a dreamer at school and loved art. After Standard Nine (now Grade 11) I decided to quit school and start working. My principal at Rondebosch Boys High School called me in and asked me what I wanted to do. When I told him I wanted to become a draughtsman he called up an architect friend of his and

214
arranged my first job for me. I started as a tracer and became an accomplished draughtsman by taking on small tasks and progressing to larger jobs as I acquired more skills.

I started studying architecture part time at the University of Cape Town fairly late as a married man and young father in my early 30’s. I worked as draughtsman during the day and did my studies and coursework in the evenings and during night. I completed my studies and worked as architect for large firms in Cape Town before establishing my own practice. I had a successful career and specialized as church architect, having designed at least forty church buildings during my career.
i3 Carl Anton Morkel

i3 CARL WAS born in Cape Town and went to school at Paarl Gymnasium. He studied architecture at The University of Port Elizabeth and married fellow architect Jolanda de Villiers in 1996. They have two children, Juliana born in 1999 and Mariana born in 2004. They live in Stellenbosch where they have an architectural practice. Jolanda is also a senior lecturer at the Architecture Department of the Cape Peninsula University of Technology in Cape Town.

ii Captain Francois Morkel

ii FRANCOIS MORKEL, *1966 has been involved with the historic VOC Castle at Cape Town since 1991, and CEO since 2001. He studied history at Stellenbosch University and was also involved with the military museum at the Castle. He was made honorary life member of the prestigious VOC Foundation in October 2013 and awarded a medal of solid silver. Captain Morkel joins a small select group of holders of the medal.
Captain Francois Morkel
On parade at the Castle, Cape Town. 2013

Francois Morkel

Captain Francois Morkel
Medal award ceremony dinner 2013

Francois Morkel

Medal awarded to Captain Francois Morkel
VOC Foundation 2013

Francois Morkel
Family Line for g2 Philip Hendrik Morkel and Hillegonda Krige

f5 Antonie Charles Morkel *15.12.1863, Caledon district  x Alida Maria Esterhuizen *1868

h1 Lois Morkel * 9.3.1922 Faure †1922

h2 Willem Adolph Krige Morkel *1923 De Put †2008 x Pauline Orffer *1921 †2013
   i1 Philip Francois Morkel *1948 x Irmgard Anna Kirschinger
   j1 Renier Morkel *1977 x Anglique Lambert
   j2 Hildegard Morkel *1978 x A.J. Reyneke
   i2 Kringe Willem Adolph Morkel *1949 †2009 x Mareta Nel
   j1 Riaan Kringe Morkel *1976
   j2 Jeanne Morkel *1979
   i3 Victor Juan Morkel *1953 x Fransina Hendrina Coetze
   j1 Estelle Morkel *1985

h3 Alida Maria Morkel *1924 Kotjeskolk †1924

h4 Anna Villiera Morkel *1926 Three Sisters †2010 x Daniel de Jager
   i1 Helga Marianne De Jager *1951 x Jaap Huisamen
   i2 Eugene Douglas de Jager *1953
   i3 Karin de Villiera De Jager *1958
   i4 Christopher Daniel de Jager *1961 x Erika Deidre Barnard

h5 Ida Thelma Morkel *1927 x Brian Glynn
   i1 Alison Florence Glynn *1959 x Nicholas van der Hoven
   i2 Maurita Margaret Glynn *1962

h6 Carle Anton Morkel *1928 Protea x Johanna Magrita Bredenkamp
   i1 Diana Morkel *1960 x Norman von Schlicht
   i2 Karen Morkel *1961 x Trevor William Lloyd
   i3 Carl Anton Morkel *1968 x Jolanda de Villers *1968
       j1 Juliana Lara Morkel *1999
       j2 Mariana Joan Morkel *2004

h7 Lois Morkel *1931 x Gerald Greef *1931
   i1 Conrad Greef *1954
   i2 Leon Greef *1956
   i3 Philip Greef *1958
   i4 Gonda Greef *1960
   i5 Erika Greef *1962

h8 Philippus Hendrik Morkel *1936 x Jeannette Wiersma
   i1 Francois Morkel *1966 x Marisa Jordaan
       j1 Paul Philip Morkel *1994
       j2 Cara-Jean Morkel *1996
   i2 Antoinette Carina Morkel *1969 x Raphael Armitrano
       i1 Andrea Armitrano
Margaret Thebus and her mother Margaret Lodewyk neé Morkel provided valuable information about this branch of the family. She researched and collaborated with the author in its documentation. Of mixed race, they are not in the existing genealogies of the family. In our pioneering study we can now link them to the Morkel Genealogy.

The daily humiliations imposed by racism and particularly apartheid, hit this mixed race branch of the family hard. It ranged from being restricted to second class living areas and public transportation, and poor treatment by officials, to smaller but still hurtful regulations such as being barred from using the best beaches reserved for whites.

The family coped in different ways. Reverend I.D. Morkel broke away from the Dutch Reformed Mission Church and founded a church where everyone was welcome, and wrote a regular column in the Cape Times about injustices suffered by his people. Others joined the ANC or emigrated to the UK, Canada and Australia. After apartheid was abolished, Gerald Morkel was part of conciliation and became premier of the Western Cape and mayor of Cape Town. Most carried on with their lives as best they could.

They are not in the Morkel genealogies. In our research we have for the first time connected this branch to the broader family. Using her family knowledge, co-author Margaret Thebus constructed a family line from the present back to Gert Thomas Morkel 1857 – 1933. We located his death notice in the Cape Archives, which shows that his parents were Hercules Morkel and Flora Simon. The GISA genealogy lists Herklaas Morkel and Flora Simon as ongekoppeldes (unattached — i.e. not linked to other Morkels in the Genealogy) who baptised four girls in 1856 in Beaufort West.
Our challenge now, was to link this Hercules (Herklaas) Morkel to the Morkel family. GISA records that his children were baptised in the mid-1850s, therefore it is likely that he was born around 1820 to 1830. Our search in the Morkel Genealogies yielded two cousins, both grandsons of 3\textsuperscript{rd} generation c7 Hercules Morkel and Helena Munnik. They were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descendants of c7 Hercules Morkel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e1 Hercules Morkel *22.2.1821 ≈15.4.1821, son of d3 Willem Morkel of Brakkefontein, Caledon and Jacoba Elizabeth Dreyer and his cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e1 Hercules Adriaan Morkel *1823, Stellenbosch †14.9.1871 x Charlotte Amelia Londt. Son of d5 Gerhardus Morkel x Johanna Frederika Brand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We could find no further information about Hercules Morkel born in 1821. We discarded him at first, because GISA has him dying in infancy, on 15.4.1821. However, according to P.W. Morkel’s Genealogy, that is his baptism date. It is likely that GISA used the wrong symbol (death instead of baptism) and that he lived to adulthood, but we do not know. We had him as the link in our first version of the family line. With new information, we have now revised this in favour of Hercules Adriaan Morkel.

We originally discarded Hercules Adriaan, born 1823, because he was married to Charlotte Amelia Londt. However, an email from a genealogist\textsuperscript{198}, directed us to a Familysearch website with baptism record for seven year old Gert Thomas Morkel. In this\textsuperscript{199}, Hercules Adriaan is clearly and unambiguously listed as his father, with Flora as his unmarried mother. With this documented evidence we now knew how the family fitted together. The Familysearch site\textsuperscript{200} also gave details of the marriage of Gert Thomas, listed as farmer at Salt Rivier Vlei in the Beaufort West District, with Mary Theron, plus signatures.

\textit{j1} Sylvia Morkel, his great great grand daughter, kindly provided a photo of Hercules Morkel with Flora Simon and ‘a sister’ (most likely her’s). Judging from the youthful appearance of Hercules, It would have been taken in the late 1850’s or 1860’s.
Hercules Adriaan farmed at Nelspoort (a railway siding north of Beaufort West) and was *veld cornet* for Beaufort West. Hercules Adriaan and Charlotte Amelia Londt were divorced\(^\text{201}\), likely in the late 1850s. Flora and her children would have moved in as his second family. The children were baptised and he looked after them. He had a proud photo taken with Flora and her sister. However, in his will\(^\text{202}\) he did not mention his son Gert Thomas.

**Baptism Register Entry for Gert Thomas Morkel**

**Marriage Register Entry Gert Thomas Morkel x Mary Theron**

Note signatures of Gert and Mary

Hercules Adriaan Morkel with Flora Simon (right) and her sister

*Sylvia Morkel*
Family Line for Samuel and Dolphina Morkel

* born  ≈ Christened  x married  † died
The # symbol is used where names or surnames are unavailable

a1 Philip Morkel 1677 - 1735 x Catharina Pasman 1691 – 1764
b4 Willem Morkel 1718 – 1788 x Helena Catharina Malan 1736 – 1825
c7 Hercules Morkel 1767 – 1808 x Helena Munnik 1736 - 1825
d5 Gerhardus Morkel – 27.10.1799 † 8.7.1826 x Johanna Frederika Brand
e1 Hercules (Herklaas) Adriaan Morkel *Stellenbosch 1823 † Beaufort West 14.9.1871 x Aug 1852 ✖ Charlotte Amelia Londt † 15.11. 1900.

Children of e1 Hercules Adriaan Morkel with Flora Simon:

f1 Johanna Frederika Morkel ≈ 30.3.1856
f2 Helena Catharina Morkel ≈ 30.3.1856
f3 Meintje Adriana Morkel ≈ 30.3.1856
f4 Flora Stiena Leonora Morkel = 30.3.1856
f5 Gert Thomas Morkel Farmer at Salt River Vlei, Beaufort West district, * 1 Jan 1857 ≈ 11 Sep 1864 † 1933 x 15 Nov 1877 Maria Theron

Children of Gert Thomas Morkel and Maria Theron:
g1 Herklaas James Morkel ≈ 1878 x Martha (Martie) ##
g2 Jane Dorothea Morkel ≈ 1880 x ## Kelly
g3 Samuel William Morkel 1881 - 1957 x Dolphina Augustus † 1974
g4 Henry Gert Morkel *27 Nov 1884 ≈25 Dec 1884
g5 James John (Jim) Morkel x Elizabeth Augustus (Dolphina’s sister)
g6 Florence Margaret Morkel x ## Hofmeester
g7 Mary Sarah Johanna Morkel x ## Murray
g8 William Thomas Morkel
g9 Dorothea (Dora) Charlotte Morkel x ## Roux

Descendants of g3 Samuel Morkel and Dolphina Augustus

h1 Rev. Isaac (Isak) David Morkel *1.12.1910 †26.5.1983 x Sarah (Sally) Isaacs
h2 Gerald (Gert) Morkel x Francina ##
h3 Samuel Morkel x Vivienne La Vita
h4 Elizabeth Morkel x Harold Ehrenreich
h5 Hercules (Moorie) Morkel x Isabel Robertson (from St Helena) xx Anne Pieterse
h6 Dolphina Morkel
h7 Daniel Morkel x Carrie Ehrenreich
h8 Mary Morkel x Henry Petersen
h9 Margaret Morkel 1924 – 2012 x William Charles Lodewyk 1916 – 1994
h10 Henry Morkel x Elizabeth Steenkamp
I grew up in a large extended family of grandparents, uncles, aunts and cousins. My mother Margaret Lodewyk joined me in Sydney, Australia and over the years we sought to document how the family fitted together. My grandfather Samuel Morkel was a successful businessman who owned two butcher shops in Beaufort West, which was supplied by his farm Platdoring, where their first son I.D. was born.

SAMUEL MARRIED Dolphina Augustus and they had ten children, with my mother Margaret the ninth. They were quite wealthy until WW II, but he and my grandmother Dolphina Augustus were generous to a fault. They provided support and food for a range of needy, including the family of the minister of the church, rev. Adam Barnard, father of Chris, who later became world famous for his pioneering heart transplant operations. In his autobiography Dr. Barnard tells that the whole Morkel family sang beautifully in church.

My grandfather would give you the shirt off his back if you needed it more than he did, so much so that by the end of the war in 1945, they had nothing left. The Barnard family lived next door and were so poor they could not afford shoes for their kids, who went barefoot. They were also a bit mischievous as kids. My mother told how they were naughty and bullied and tormented the Barnard kids. Chris and his siblings would walk on the other side of the road to avoid them, but Mum and her brothers used to collect big Karoo thorns and throw them where the kids had to walk, and laughed when they trod on them.

My grandparents had a very large dining room table that could seat 20, if not more. The family would gather around with photos spread on the table. My cousins played outside but as long as I kept very quiet and did not interrupt, I was allowed to stay
and listen. Sadly, almost all the photos have disappeared. By the end of the Second World War the family, in reduced financial circumstances, moved to Crawford, a suburb of Cape Town.

Before she passed away, my mother and I compiled the family line as best we could. Her grandfather was Gert Thomas Morkel, 1857 – 1933. The dates are from his gravestone in Beaufort West. Beyond that, we knew there was a Hercules Morkel, but not much more. Our research eventually tied it all together with the Morkel genealogy and the full family line, as far as we could construct it, is on the website.

Here I provide brief sketches of my uncles and aunts.

**h1 Isaac Dawid (I.D.) Morkel**

I.D. AND his wife Sally had three children, Sylvia, Lionel and Augustine. He was noted as the founder of the Calvyn Protestant Church of South Africa and activist against apartheid. His stance against the abuse of alcohol, wayward dress and behaviour of women made him both respected and scorned by sections of the community.

He was 14 years older than my mother and he was a strict and sobering influence on the family. Weddings and other family gatherings were quite staid until he retired for the evening and we could let our hair down a bit — he was not unaware.

**h2 Gerald (Gert) Morkel**

GERT AND his wife Francina has a son, Keith. He was the first child to venture from home in the Karoo. There was no work to be found there, and rumblings of WW II had started, so he moved to Cape Town. He mainly worked in transportation. We remember him driving exceptionally long trucks loaded with large lengths of pipes. Once established there, several siblings joined him in the move to the city, and he became a father figure.
h3 Samuel Morkel

SAMUEL AND his wife Vivienne had five children: William, Lynette, Elise, Marion and Henry. When the older brothers left home, he was left to be his cabinet–maker father’s main helper. He was a builder. On the job training gave him expertise in planning, masonry, plumbing and much else. He could read building plans like a professional, estimate costs, manage workers and meet deadlines.

He was respected in the community for his generosity and kindness to those less fortunate than himself. A man who, well into his senior years, continued to work, raised his family and provided the means for them to obtain what he hadn’t had, a good formal education.

h4 Elizabeth (Elise) Morkel

ELIZABETH MARRIED Harold Ehrenreich and they had three children, Carl, Gretchen and Harold. Elise was the eldest daughter in a family with several younger siblings and she quickly became the organiser. This was honed by necessity and became a very strong trait of her personality. Also as a caregiver, she continued taking care of the needy in care facilities, well into her retirement. She was the ultimate resourceful dressmaker, and any piece of material would become a beautiful dress (or two!). Yes she was resourceful.

In the 1960’s Elise and her family emigrated to Canada. This was a difficult decision. But, the future of her children being the most important, she sacrificed the closeness to her family in South Africa.
Hercules (Moorie) Morkel

MOORIE MARRIED twice. With his first wife, Isabel they had two sons Gerald and Clifford, and with second wife Anne, eight children, Frank, Peter, Samuel, Dennis, Michael, Priscilla, Charmaine and Annalise. His appearance, tall, large eyes, which seemed to look right through you, and generally stern appearance, belied his nature. In our opinion he was the gentlest and lovable of all. Without a doubt his first love was his family. Hercules was basically a quiet man, with strong Christian convictions.

Gerald Morkel born 3 January 1941 was the oldest son of Moorie and Isabel Robertson. Gerald was active in community and political life. A member of the Cape Town Hockey Club and chairman of the Cape Town Cricket Club. He was active in first the Labour Party and then the National Party and member of parliament from 1989 on. He became premier of the Western Cape Province 1998 – 2001 councillor of the city of Cape Town and mayor in 2001/2002.

Dolphina Morkel

SHE NEVER married and was the eccentric. She would try the newest fashions, then add her own touch, be it ribbons or bows, or the angle of her hat, or the variety of colours. Surprisingly enough, this she passed on to several nieces and even grand-nieces who had never met her! She never married, but treated nieces and nephews as her own, and always made them feel special. When her parents moved to Cape Town in the 1950s she lived with them, and became their caregiver and provider.

Babs or Baby as she was originally called, allegedly because she was going to be the last child of Samuel and Dolphina, was a travelling salesperson. She plied her wares (which she carried in a suitcase) from suburb to suburb, rain or shine on a pushbike. She mainly sold her wares, material and other sewing needs to housewives. It would be her mode of transport that would ultimately claim her life in middle age. Riding the pushbike caused injury to her body which developed into cancer.

Daniel Morkel

DANNY BOY as he was affectionately called, and his wife Caroline had a daughter, Joan. He found his niche in life as a confectioner, baker and pastry cook. He was a true gentleman who lost his wife through illness when their daughter Joan was in her
early teens. While Joan attended school and mainly stayed with relatives, he worked in Outshoorn for many years before he moved to Cape Town in the 60’s.

**h8 Mary Morkel**

MARY MARRIED Henry Petersen and they had three children, Hilton, Albert and Wesley. As a young child Mary was struck down by rheumatic and scarlet fever. She spent 6 months in a sterile room in isolation. In adulthood, and possibly because of her childhood illness and the conditions she was forced to live in during that time, she chose a profession in radiography. A rewarding career where she could help others who were ill. In her home she was meticulously clean and tidy. Again, maybe as a side effect of her childhood illness.

She dressed stylishly and every item of clothing was colour co-ordinated. And who can forget her love of beaded necklaces. If anything, you could say she was artsy. She loved photography, and had a Brownie camera, which was ahead of its time (in the 60’s). She would let some of us use it for special events, carefully showing us the settings, and when we were done, she would take the films to be processed at Movie Snaps.

As a high school student, during the Sharpeville riots, and resulting unemployment, I remember that it was she who supplied me with text books and supplies so I could continue my education. She was very special.

**h9 Margaret Morkel**

My sister Carol and I tell about our mother Margaret in chapter 38 below.

**h10 Henry Morkel**

HENRY MARRIED Elizabeth and they had six children, Isaac, Jeanette, Nicolas, Maryanne, William and Peter. Henry was fun loving, always ready for mischief. Like his eldest brother Isak, he was a minister in the Calvyn Protestant Church. He was also a teacher. In the 1960’s he emigrated to Canada with his wife and 4 eldest children. The youngest two, William and Peter were born in Canada.

He continued as a teacher, and completed a University degree and other special courses, which qualified him to teach students with special needs. Mainly with emotional and learning disabilities. Although he did not continue as a minister, he was very active as a lay person in his church, and continued to reach out to people, ‘one person at a time’.
DESCENDANTS OF c7 HERCULES MORKEL

Children of Samuel and Dolphina Morkel
h2 Gert, h3 Samuel, h4 Elise, h5 Moorie, h6 Dolphina, h7 Daniel, h8 Mary, h10 Henry

Photos of h1 I.D. are in chapter 39, and that of h9 Margaret below

Margaret Thebus

h9 Margaret Lodewyk,
née Morkel abt 1960

Margaret Thebus

Margaret Thebus
cô-author

Margaret Lodewyk aged 87
Photos Margaret Thebus

Carol Ackerman
cô-author
MARGARET LODEWYK, born on 15 October 1924, was the 9th and second youngest child of Samuel and Dolfina Morkel. As a child she was called Griet, and that later changed to Rita in Cape Town. She was the only child amongst her brothers and sisters who had red hair and she disliked it so much that she always tinted it dark brown. She was feisty and a rebel.

SHE HAD fond memories of her childhood growing up in Beaufort West. There were horses and donkeys to ride, fruit trees to climb and swimming in the dam. Her grandfather was the local undertaker and made his own coffins….which offered good hiding places when playing games or to scare the local children.

Besides the immediate family, her parents had kids from outlying country farms and small towns to attend school, boarding with them. Dinner time was chaotic and serving dinner was a ritual, starting from the eldest to the youngest. That didn’t suit her. As her father’s favorite she tried to sit next to him to get some of the tasty bits reserved for the head of the house. The table could seat 25 or more and to this day that table still stands in the kitchen of the home of her brother, the late Isak Dawid.

Her childhood was short-lived. She left school at 15 in 1939 and, as the war had started, work was scarce. The family was placed under house arrest as Samuel refused to send his sons to war, and this was interpreted as the family being German/Hitler sympathisers. Two of her brothers, Hercules and Gerald had been sent to Cape Town to avoid being conscripted into the army and she was sent to them in Cape Town. Hercules found employment for her at Messaris, a potato chip and nut factory. Mum always said Mrs Messaris treated her like a daughter and was very protective of her particularly as many war ships, English and Australian were in Cape Town.
Her brother Hercules had married Isabel Robertson and they had two sons, Gerald, who as an adult, became mayor of Cape Town and premier of the Western Cape, and his brother Clifford. Isabel contracted tuberculosis when the boys were very young and passed away and Mum gave up her job and went to live with Mrs Robertson (Hercules’ mother-in-law) and looked after the boys.

Enter William Charles Peters (known as Lodewyk). William was a friend of Hercules and he introduced Dad to Mum. Within months Dad had gone to Beaufort West with mum and her brother to ask Samuel’s permission to marry his daughter. They were married on 12 June 1943, Margaret was 19 years old. They lived in a house in the suburb of Retreat. Following in the example of her parents, Mum took in nieces who came to Cape Town to study as boarders. Once again she had the familiar busy, bustling family life. Money was always in short supply but Mum always made it stretch and I can never remember a time when as children we felt poor, but then as children, if you are happy, nothing else matters.

When I (co-author Margaret) as youngest daughter, started school, Mum returned to work. She found a position at the Windsor Hotel in Fish Hoek in the housekeeping department. Travel to work was by bicycle for 2 miles to the railway station, then a train to work.

She was vibrant, energetic, had a great sense of humour and was the champion of the Morkel family’s younger generation. She kept their secrets and hid their little misbehaviours from their parents, and she found ways during tough financial times to entertain them, even if it meant selling a few chickens to take the kids to the movies. Many of the parents of the older generation would tell their kids to go outside and pick a lat (stick) from a tree so that the parent could give them a few supposedly well-deserved smacks. Margaret did not chastise the nephews and nieces who sought her counsel, instead she would say nou pluk jy a lat vir jou stert. In other words, think about what you are doing.........

Having a brother who was a minister placed some restrictions on the entertainment ‘the young people’ wanted to participate in. He didn’t approve of going to the movies, dancing, smoking and drinking and young ladies definitely didn’t wear slacks, because it showed the shape of their body. So to the rescue comes Mum. ‘You can wear slacks but if Uncle Boetie comes to visit you have to put on a skirt or dress’. She held dance parties for all of us, any reason to get the young to enjoy themselves. By 1960 there were 27 nieces and nephews so that made for one big get together. I am sure I.D. must have wondered why everyone always wanted to go to Aunty Rita.
Sundays were special. By that time her parents had moved to Cape Town from Beaufort West and Sunday afternoons were set aside for all the uncles and aunts to converge on Crawford to visit the grandparents. When her father became ill, prior to his death in 1957, Margaret moved her family to Crawford for a week to allow her to look after him. Because we were so young, Mum said it was okay for us to miss school. We certainly didn’t complain.

Her lifestyle changed again in 1962 when the family moved to Lansdowne. This was probably the defining change in her life. Mum finished working at the hotel and secured a position as a nursing assistant at Harewood Nursing Home in Kenilworth. She was a fast learner and made quite an impression on the Matron of the Nursing Home who suggested she undertake her nurses training, which she did. Her preference was always to work the night shifts, to be at home during the day when we came home from school, and also because it paid more. It always amazed us where she got her energy from, she just never seemed to get tired and nothing was ever too much for her to do. Continuing her nursing career, she worked in a number of public and private hospitals, including the Volks Hospital in Cape Town in the Surgical Ward and St Augustines Hospital, Durban, and also started doing nursing in the private homes of people who wanted individual attention and nursing in their private residences. This again allowed her to continue to care for her family during the day because she mainly did night work, which was arranged through a Nursing Agency.

Life was never dull with Margaret around. As young children and teenagers we were very protected. Being two daughters meant protecting us from the dangers ‘out there’. Growing up in Cape Town was probably no safer or more dangerous than anywhere else, but our activities outside the home were strictly monitored. Church activities and involvement in everything associated with it was an integral part of growing up. Services on Sunday, either at the Calvinist Church with Mum or the Baptist Church with Dad, Sunday school, prayer meetings, youth group was the norm. Friends, when we were allowed to have them, were carefully screened and we were often told, ‘no, that’s not your company’. So our social life revolved almost entirely around family.

Margaret’s eldest daughter Carol (co-author) married young in the 1960s. They had three sons and a daughter and moved to Durban where her husband had a position in engineering.
Moving to Australia

I, MARGARET (co-author), had been restless for some time. I didn’t like the racial discrimination and felt out of place in the country of my birth. Discrimination was becoming more acute and I made the decision to leave South Africa and applied for immigration to Australia. My application was approved within about two months and I left SA. By 1971 I had married and was expecting our first child, so Mum decided to come to Australia for a holiday and to help with the new baby. She stayed in Australia for 3 months and during that time developed a fondness for the country. This insight into another life appealed and excited her and when she returned to Cape Town, she decided Australia was the place to be and applied to emigrate. She was always ready for a new adventure. Life in South Africa was at best a challenge. This was a time when apartheid, deprivation of basic human rights and physical and mental abuse was evident everywhere. For many leaving South Africa, it was an opportunity to have a better life. Some family members had already migrated to Canada and others soon followed.

Their visa application took a while longer because of their age and Dad wanted to continue working until he reached retirement age. They finally arrived in Sydney, Mum in December 1973 and Dad in January 1974.

With her nursing background she had no difficulty securing employment and continued to work for another 10 or 12 years. They were happy years. She was doing what she enjoyed and was away from what had become a country consumed by political and racial unrest. Her eldest daughter, Carol and her family had emigrated to Canada, so for the next twenty years Margaret made numerous trips overseas to Canada and also to South Africa. Dad visited Canada twice but never returned to South Africa.
39 I. D. Morkel Church Founder

By André T. Morkel and Margaret Thebus

On 30 September 1950, some days before the meeting of the Dutch Reformed Mission Church Synod, Rev. I.D. Morkel announced that he and 26 members of the Rondebosch congregation were forming their own church, *Die Calvyn Protestante Kerk* (Calvin Protestant Church or CPC). It did not practice discrimination on the grounds of colour, but apart from this, did not differ in its teachings and rites from the DRMC or the *Moederkerk*. In practice most of its members were of mixed race.

ISAAC DAWID (I.D. or Boetie) Morkel 1910 – 1983 was born in Beaufort West, Cape, the oldest of ten children of Samuel Morkel and Dolfina Augustus. He left school after standard six to help in the family butchery. At 18 years he was managing one of his father’s butcheries. Already in his childhood I.D. felt a calling to join the church and at sixteen years he was preaching sermons. However, his duties in the family business prevented him undertaking the necessary religious studies. By 1938 he decided to take his studies further. He completed high school by correspondence and obtained his Senior Certificate in 1940.

He studied at the Stofberg Theological School where he was the best student in his class. He was able to fund himself as a student with income from his business activities. By the late 1940s he was a minister (eerwaarde) and manager of the Dutch Reformed Mission School at the Cape Town suburb of Crawford, and chairman of the Wynberg Ring.

Reverend I.D. Morkel was a dedicated man of strong principles. He demanded much from himself and his flock, but he also cared and ministered to the needs of his people who endured racial discrimination and widespread poverty. He was against alcohol abuse and immorality with similar fervour as he campaigned against government regulations.
He spoke out against discrimination, particularly as it applied to mixed-race communities at the Cape. He felt they had strong cultural bonds with whites. In September 1948, 116 members from 28 congregations met in Crawford and unanimously supported a motion tabled by reverend Morkel to oppose apartheid on scriptural grounds. Morkel was supported by a young white minister Ds. David Botha, but relations with the White Mother Church (*Moederkerk*) deteriorated. Frustrated by the lack of support from the *Moederkerk*, Morkel became increasingly political. During the inauguration of the *Voortrekker Monument* on 16th December 1949, he called a day of prayer in supplication that the Lord deliver the land from the affliction of apartheid\(^{207}\)\(^{208}\). He also had a daily column in the Cape Times newspaper, focusing on racial discrimination.

On 30 September 1950, some days before the meeting of the Dutch Reformed Mission Church (DRMC) Synod, he announced that he and key supporters were leaving it to form their own church, *Die Calvyn Protestante Kerk* (Calvin Protestant Church or CPC). It did not practice discrimination on the grounds of colour, but apart from this, did not differ in its teachings and rites from the DRCM or the *Moederkerk*. In practice most of its members were of mixed race. Morkel gave his farewell sermon on the 8th of October 1950, in Athlone from the back of a lorry (truck). He had been forbidden by the DRMC to use the Rondebosch church building. Five years after its inception, the new church had grown to six branches and over 2,000 members. By the end of the 1950’s it had about 13,000 members.

The CPC came into conflict with the Government over access to Komaggas, one of the Coloured Reserves in Little Namaqualand, in the Northwest Cape. The church was welcomed enthusiastically by the locals. On 8 December 1956 Reverend Morkel visited Komaggas and held a service in the open. Nearly a third of the population of the Reserve attended this service, while only 26 people were at the service in the DRMC\(^ {209}\).

During the first fourteen months after Reverend Morkel was invited to Komaggas, 256 children were baptised and 90 young people confirmed. On 5 May 1957, a petition containing more than 700 signatures was presented to Dr I. D. du Plessis (Commissioner for Coloured Affairs) asking for permission to acquire land on which to erect a church. The request was refused.

Reverend Morkel and his congregation at Komaggas continued in their pleas and were always assured by Dr du Plessis that he was prepared to treat their case sympathetically and that after the
passing of new regulations in October everything would be settled to their satisfaction. When the regulations were finally issued, they were a major disappointment. For meetings of more than five persons, special approvals from the Commissioner were required. The regulations did allow for events such as funerals, weddings and religious services, but only if held by an established church. The churches active in the area sought approval, but only the DRMC was allowed. The others, including the Calvinist Protestant, Anglican and Roman Catholic churches were not approved, and had to obtain permission for every service they held.

(Author’s note: I remember Dr. I.D. du Plessis as a decent person with sympathy for the plight of the coloured community. He had written extensively about their culture and problems. This fits with the account of his meeting with Reverend Morkel. But he worked within a harsh system, and it is likely that he was out-manoeuvred by bureaucrats and overruled by his political masters. Perhaps the DRMC also had a hand in this. A.T.M.).

The first prosecution took place on March 7, 1958. Three members of the Calvinist Protestant Church were found guilty of holding a meeting of more than five persons in the Komaggas Reserve. At the meeting a prayer was said, a hymn sung and a short sermon was delivered. They were fined £3 each and suspended for three years.

Reverend Morkel then applied for permission to send four ministers to spend eight days in the Reserves of Komaggas and Concordia (which also had a small CPC congregation) from April 16 to 23. On April 17 he was finally told that permission would be granted to only one minister to work for only one day in each Reserve. The
minister and an elder who accompanied him arrived the night before at Komaggas and were welcomed by 700 people. Before dawn the next day about 600 people were waiting for the first service. They had walked miles to be there; many had children on their backs. The minister had to attend 40 baptisms, officiate at confirmations and confirmation classes, a council meeting, a woman’s auxiliary meeting, hold two full services, one with communion, and travel many miles visiting the sick and the aged all in one day. It began at 4:30 a.m. and ended late at night.

I.D. Morkel’s youngest brother, Henry, was also a minister in the CPC and in later years emigrated to Canada. At the time of writing, the CPC is still active, with websites for several of its presbyteries.

Boetie (I.D.) Morkel married Sarah (Sally) Isaacs, a school teacher in Kimberley, on 1 April 1936. They had three children, Sylvia, Lionel and Augustine. He passed away on 26 May 1983.

In 1968 he was awarded an honorary doctorate of divinity from the International Free University of London for his work in upholding the ideals of Christian, social and moral practices and for furthering goodwill among men of all races.

In 2007 the Order of the Disa was awarded to Dr I.D. Morkel in the Premier Rasool award ceremony.210

The award citation read:

Dr Isaac Morkel quit his leadership position and church in order to retain the integrity of his Christian faith at a time in the 1940s and ‘50s when the church was under increasing pressure to either conform to apartheid theology or stand for Christian justice.

On October 15, 1950, he officially founded the Calvin Protestant Church of South Africa. His courage and conviction against apartheid’s determination to use the church as part of its propaganda machinery served as a path breaking step for others to emulate as the inevitable process of peace and justice unfolded in the ensuing decades.
Part 6

Finally

40 The Two Rhoda Families Muslim and Christian  239
41 The Morkel Connection  243
42 Naming the Children  247
43 Origin of the Morkel Name  249
44 Deep Ancestry  251
45 Facts and Stats  253
46 Epilogue  257
FINALLY
The Two Rhoda Families
Muslim and Christian

By Ebrahim Rhoda

The author tells of his pioneering research into the origins of the two branches of the Rhoda families, Muslim and Christian. His research indicate that they stem from a Javanese girl Kandaza who married Rhode. They and their children were slaves on Morkel farms Voorburg and Onverwacht. Ebrahim Rhoda combined oral history with archival records. He has received awards for his careful research. This is an edited version.

André T. Morkel

The Muslim Rhodas

I WAS bitten by the research bug and became passionately curious to know where my forebears came from. According to a fifth generation descendant of the Muslim Rhodas, the late Gadija Wentzel\textsuperscript{211} (born Rhoda), the forebears of the Muslim Rhodas\textsuperscript{212} of the Strand were two slave brothers, Leander and Jacobus. When slavery finally ended at the Cape in 1838 the two brothers settled at Mostert Bay, became fishermen and embraced Islam. Leander was renamed Fagedien and Jacobus was renamed Samodien. According to Deeds Office records, the name Mostert Bay for the area today known as the Strand was already in use in 1714 when it was shown as the southern boundary of the farm Vlooibaai\textsuperscript{213}.

My first task was to establish when and where the two brothers died. I started with the Slave Registers of farms in Hottentots Holland, one of the six wards in the Stellenbosch district. From 1816 it was compulsory for slaveholders to keep a register of all their slaves including those born into slavery. I hoped to find a record of when
the brothers died, and their age, so that I could work out approximate dates of birth. Then I could search for two slave brothers named Leander and Jacobus, born in those years on a specific farm or farms in a specific area. Death notices I found in the Cape Archives enabled me to establish that Fagedien Rode was born in 1819 and died in 1912 and Samodien Rode was born in 1824 and died in 1911. Both died at Somerset Strand. Samodien’s death notice also revealed that his parents were Kalamodien and Jaria Rode.

The next step was daunting: how to find two slave brothers, Leander and Jacobus, not uncommon slave names, who were born in 1819 and 1824. Fortuitously, a fellow researcher, Jody Sarich of Chicago, had compiled the records of the slaves of the Morkel family of Hottentots Holland. They showed that Leander and Jacobus were registered in the slave register of Willem Morkel of the farm Voorburg. Leander was born on 1 March 1819 and Jacobus on 1 September 1824, and registered on 3 April 1819 and 24 November 1824 respectively. Their mother, Kandaza, was first registered on 5 December 1816 when she was already 25 years old and the register indicated that she was born at the Cape. Thus, Kandaza was born in 1791, probably on Voorburg. Her husband, Kalamodien, was a free black resident who was listed on the census of Mostert Bay. In 1839 Kalamodien (Kameding) of Mostert Bay was acquitted in a court case after he had been accused of receiving stolen grapes which two youths had stolen from the farm of Hendrik Johannes Morkel.

In 1829 Willem Morkel Senior must have been in some financial difficulty because the Mortgage Register in the Cape Archives reflects that he offered Kandaza, Leander and Jacobus, along with seventeen of their fellow-slaves as collateral for a loan of 16,000 florins (abt R3,200) from Pieter Gerhard van Zyl. Four years away from final freedom in 1838, Kandaza was appraised for £90-10-0d whilst Leander and Jacobus were valued at £90 and £75.

I could not find the date when Kandaza and her two sons, Leander and Jacobus, joined the settlement at Mostert Bay. By 1838 there had been an Islamic enclave at Mostert Bay for sixteen years. Kandaza was given the name of Jaria, which in Arabic means slave girl, most probably by one of the imams at Mostert Bay. Leander was renamed Fagedien and Jacobus became Samodien.

Samodien Rode (Rhode) was my great-great grandfather. The Muslim Rhoda family was most probably united at Mostert Bay before 1849 as Fagedien’s eldest daughter, Momena, was born at Mostert Bay in 1849. Momena’s death registration in
the Cape Archives indicates that she died at the age of 65 in 1914. Momena was my maternal great-grandmother.

The Christian Rhodas

THROUGH THE kind co-operation of Stephanie Samson, nee Rhoda, the daughter of Christian Robert Rhoda (1896-1972), who was the principal of C.R. Rhoda Methodist Primary School at the Strand, I obtained the origin of the Rhoda family of the Christian faith. According to their oral history, it starts with Abraham, who was the son of a Javanese slave girl and one of the Morkels on the farm Die Bos, near Somerset West. This Javanese slave woman then married a fellow-slave, adopted the Muslim faith and settled at the Strand, which was then known as Mostert Bay. The date when this took place I must still establish. How true or not this oral history was, I had to prove.

I succeeded in proving that there was indeed such a slave as Abraham. He appears in the 1816 slave register of Voorburg as a seven year old boy, which puts his birthdate at 1809. His name follows soon after Kandaza’s name but Abraham’s mother’s name is not indicated. Initially, we knew that he had children but we did not know who his wife was. We knew the children were Christian, Dinah and Eva. Using the Slave Register of the farmer, Hendrik Johannes Morkel of the farm Onverwacht (Die Bos), I located the oldest son, Christian. He was born on 27 January 1832, with a Registration Date of 14 February 1832 in which his mother was indicated as Eva.

From 1816 it became compulsory that slave owners should keep slave registers. Slave owners had to enter every slave child that was born in these registers in addition to the slaves they owned. On 15 November 1833 Christian’s sister, Dinah, was born and the mother was again Eva according to the entry in the same register. These registers did not indicate the father of the child, so at this point we had no proof that Abraham was indeed the father of Christian and Dinah.

With the assistance of Jody Sarich, we succeeded in tracing Eva to the farm Vergelegen in Somerset West. Eva was registered for the first time in 1816 in the Slave Register of Wilhelms Marthinus Theunissen, the owner of Vergelegen. Eva was then just a little girl of five years old, which tells us that she was born in 1811. Who Eva’s parents were, we do not know and we still did not prove that Abraham was indeed the father of Christian and Dinah.

We were fortunate to have so many fundi’s around us, because one morning we were in a meeting at UWC when Dr. Robert Ross walked in and said to me: ‘There is
your Abraham that you are looking for! What he gave me was truly solid gold! It was the Report of the Resident Magistrate on Mission Institutions \(^{225}\), published in 1849.

Here we have the first tangible proof that Abraham was indeed the father of Christian who was then 17 years old and his sister Dinah who was 16. His wife was doing daily work, but her name is not indicated in this report as are the names of the wives of the other labourers. Abraham was now staying for ten years with his family on Erf no.9 of the Wesleyan Mission Grounds in Somerset West. At this time Christian was unemployed and Abraham was working for someone who undertook trading journeys. Abraham could neither read nor write. We also learn from this Report that Abraham had six children in 1849, of whom two were older than 16 years and the others were under 12 years of age. In attempting to fill the gap of 15 years between the Emancipation year of 1834 and 1849, we can deduce that they had to serve another four years apprenticeship period before they could leave the farm as free human beings, which means that they must have settled on the Wesleyan Mission Grounds after 1838.

Farmers were compensated for their slaves when slavery was abolished. Thus slaves had to be appraised so that a monetary value could be attached to them. So it is that we find Abraham, Eva, Christian and Dinah among the 33 slaves on the list of Farm 3934 \(^{226}\), Onverwacht (Die Bos) which belonged to Hendrik Johannes Morkel. As a matter of interest, he received two thousand three hundred and forty one pounds, seventeen shillings and a sixpence for the 33 slaves including one deserter. The slave link in the Rhoda family of the Christian faith had thus been proven beyond any doubt.

---

FINALLY

Ebrahim Rhoda

Rodney Tyrone Rhoda

E. Rhoda

R. Rhoda
41 The Morkel Connection

By Rodney Rhoda, Timothy Visser, Ebrahim Rhoda and André Morkel

A combination of oral family history and archival research has that the Christian branch of the Rhoda family stems from Abraham Rhoda, the son of a Morkel and a slave girl Rhoda, or Kandaza. Archival documents start with Abraham and does not list his father. However, oral traditions of a connection with the Morkels are pervasive throughout the extended Rhoda family. While details might change with retelling, the central theme is powerful.

EBRAHIM RHODA’S research showed that Abraham Rhoda born in 1809, married a slave girl Eva from Vergelegen and that they had three children, Christian, Dinah and Eva from who became the Christian branch of the Rhoda family of Somerset West. Abraham was the son of a slave girl, almost certainly Kandaza and allegedly her Morkel owner. Kandaza married Kalamodien Rode and the Muslim branch originated with their children, Faggedien and Samodien Rhode. It is the Morkel connection that we explore in this chapter. Two members of this branch with an interest in family history are Rodney Tyrone Rhoda and Dr. Timothy Visser.

Rodney Rhoda\textsuperscript{227} writes:

FOR MANY years, there were no written records, and information was passed on from one generation to the next through word of mouth. The Rhoda family started in the early 1800s with a slave woman. She was Muslim, of Javanese birth and was known by the name Rhoda or also Kandaza. Under Dutch rule at the time at the Cape, slaves were imported from Java and the islands now known as Indonesia. They worked as cooks, tradesmen, craftsmen and farm hands. Rhoda was the property of a German farmer, Jan Hurter Morkel, (it was likely Daniel Johannes Morkel — A.T.M.) who owned a farm in Hottentots Holland. Rhoda
was very attractive and soon caught the eye of her owner. A serious affair developed between Morkel and Rhoda and subsequently a child was born. According to Ebrahim Rhoda’s research, the first-born son was named Abraham Rhoda. There were other children as well, and although some were not the children of Morkel, they all took on the surname Rhoda. Some of the children adopted the Christian faith, others the Muslim faith.

Abraham Rhoda was a good-looking young man, half-German and half Indonesian. He received special attention from his father and was given a piece of land and some cattle so that he could establish a dairy farm. Part of the land is today occupied by a large block of flats next to the Apostolic Church in Lourens Road, Somerset West, adjacent to the prime business district of the town. Up to 1976 there was still a dairy on the old premises.

Dr Timothy Visser

THERE IS a strong oral tradition in the Rhoda family that, when one of the Rhoda elders died, the Morkel owner of Die Bos visited the family and offered his condolences. He also offered to pay for the funeral, which was politely declined. There is some uncertainty about who died, Abraham Johannes Rhoda (born 1859) or one of two Christian Robert Rhodas (1868 – 1940; or 1896 -1972).

My father and his cousin as children visited Die Bos and were received by the owner, f4 H.J.L. Morkel (Hennie Bos) like family — and called Boetie and Sussie, names which have persisted. On the death of Susanna Fortuin (née Rhoda, the Morkel family arrived at her home and reiterated the known family connection and offered to pay for the funeral (declined with grace). One wonders why Abraham did not take on the Morkel name rather than Rhoda.

I was able to identify the erven in Somerset West that the Morkels gave Abraham, and commissioned a professional to research the archives for transfer documents. Sadly we were unable to locate any such transfers. Ryk Morkel was an attorney in Somerset West and informed the Rhoda family that he knew of the transfer of the erven to Abraham Rhoda. He is no longer alive and his daughters were unable to assist in our quest. He is from a line that goes back to third generation Daniel Johannes Morkel of Onverwacht (later Die Bos), then Willem Morkel of Morgenster, then Pieter Johannes Morkel of Oatlands and finally Nicolaas Morkel of Somerset West.
André Morkel writes:

THE ORAL history (reinforced with family bible entries) makes a strong case that the Rhoda family stems from a Morkel owner of either Voorburg or Die Bos, and a Javanese slave Kandaza, also known as Rhoda. Ebrahim Rhoda’s research shows that Kandaza and Abraham were registered slaves on Voorburg, the farm of Willem Morkel. It is likely that Abraham was Kandaza’s son but final research evidence is lacking. At a later stage, with emancipation in 1834, Abraham, his wife Eva and children were slaves at Die Bos. Old families could usually lay out relationships going back many generations. In the Rhoda case, they were remembering back to grandfather (or great grandfather) Abraham — not a challenging task.

While there might have been a tendency within the Morkel family to downplay what they would have viewed as an indiscretion by an ancestor, there were also acknowledgements — providing Abraham with property in Somerset West and cattle to start a dairy business, and paying respects to the bereaved Rhoda family and offering to pay for a funeral. Solicitor Ryk Morkel informed the family that he was aware of the property transfer from Morkel to Abraham Rhoda. This is a powerful corroboration of the Rhoda narrative.

The Morkel family probably owned some erven in Somerset West, from the time when they were involved in the establishment of the town in 1818. If so, they did not have to purchase the erven they gave to Abraham.

Considering the challenges involved with this research, it is not surprising that there would be some discrepancies and uncertainties. These are relatively minor and do not detract from the central theme.

- Ebrahim’s research does not mention the erven, cattle and dairy business, but places Abraham Rhoda as an illiterate at the Wesleyan Mission, working for a travelling salesman. These two accounts are not necessarily in conflict and could refer to different stages in Abraham’s life.

- The sources for the oral history may have been vague about the names for the Morkels at Die Bos. Ebrahim has Kandaza at Voorburg, owned by Willem Morkel. Rodney has her at Onverwacht owned by ‘Jan Hurter Morkel’. The owner at the time would have been Daniel Johannes, not Jan Hurter. There has been only one Morkel by that name, and about a hundred years later — the Rugby Springbok ‘Jack’ Morkel. The Rhoda oral historian might have
confused the ‘Jan’ handed down in the family with that of the more recent ‘Jan Hurter’ whose death at that time would have featured quite prominently in the newspapers. We do not know, and does it really matter?

The consensus is that the Rhoda family originally came from a union of a Morkel with slave girl Kandaza. at Voorburg and her son Abraham at Die Bos. Providing erven and cattle would indicate that his heritage was acknowledged by the Morkel family. However, I find it sad that he and his family continued to be slaves until emancipation.

Over time the Rhoda descendants of Kandaza and Abraham became leading citizens in Somerset West, prominent in education and the professions. These are remarkable achievements considering their slave origins. Being of mixed race, their journey was even more difficult as they had to contend with racial discrimination and apartheid.

Rodney Rhoda’s y-DNA shows that his Haplogroup is I2b1. This confirms that the Christian Rhoda family stem from a European (very likely German) ancestor. However, the Morkel y-DNA is Haplogroup I1, which casts some doubts whether Willem or Daniel Johannes were involved. This issue is still to be resolved.

Family tree for Rodney Rhoda

c6 Daniel Johannes Morkel or c5 Willem Morkel with Candaza (Rhoda, Slave at Voorburg) *1791

d1 Abraham Rhoda (slave at Voorburg & later Die Bos) * 1809 x Eva *1811 (slave from Vergelegen)

e1 Christian Robert Rhoda (slave at Die Bos) *27.1.1832 †1926 x 7.7.1857 Katrina Katz = 9.12.1849

f3 Jephta Jacobus Rhoda*4.4 1864 †19.10.1918 x Johanna Wilhelmina Adams *1861 †1930

g1 William James Rhoda *1890 †1969 x Anne Delport *1892 †1983


i1 Rodney Tyrone Rhoda *5.10.1940 x 16.12.1965 Gwen Benjamin *7.6.1942
42 Naming the Children

The names Willem, Hendrik Johannes, Daniel Johannes, Philip and Hercules and a few others occur with high frequency in the Morkel family, particularly during the early years. Some of the family are continuing the family tradition.

STARTING WITH 3\textsuperscript{rd} generation Daniel Johannes Morkel born in 1764, the names of the first born sons in our family line goes in a steady sequence for nine generations:

3\textsuperscript{rd} Daniel Johannes Morkel,
4\textsuperscript{th} Hendrik Johannes Morkel,
5\textsuperscript{th} Daniel Johannes Morkel,
6\textsuperscript{th} Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel,
7\textsuperscript{th} Daniel Johannes Morkel (my Father).
8\textsuperscript{th} Hendrik Johannes Theron Morkel (my Oldest Brother),
9\textsuperscript{th} Daniel Johannes Morkel (my Nephew)
10\textsuperscript{th} Hendrik Wade Morkel (his Son)
11\textsuperscript{th} Daniel Henri Morkel (his Grandson)

Naming the Sons

IT REFLECTS a tradition among Afrikaner families to name the first born son after his paternal grandfather. And it goes further to include 2\textsuperscript{nd} and 3\textsuperscript{rd} sons.

1\textsuperscript{st} born son: Paternal Grandfather's name
2\textsuperscript{nd} son: Maternal Grandfather's name
3\textsuperscript{rd} son: Father's name

Subsequent sons were often named after Uncles and earlier ancestors.

While there was no compulsion, the tradition honoured ancestors and made Grandparents happy. I analysed our own family line and found that these traditions were followed consistently. The only aberration occurred early in the 2\textsuperscript{nd} generation where with b3 Willem, the 2\textsuperscript{nd} and 3\textsuperscript{rd} child sequence was reversed.
I continued the tradition but my father-in-law's name was the same as my father's thus the paternal and maternal grandfathers were both called Daniel and my own name, André passed on to our 2nd son.

Infant mortality complicated the naming sequence. When a child died young, his or her name was often given to a newly born baby. Thus in the 7th generation, my father, although the fourth son, was named after his paternal grandfather because the first born with that name died young.

The tradition helps in unravelling family lines, but can also cause challenges, with the same names cropping up repeatedly. For example, b3 Willem's second child was also Willem. His first grandchild would now also be Willem, and so on down that line. The longest sequence I encountered in the family genealogy was six generations of Willem Morkel — from the first b3 Willem born in 1718 to the 6th Willem born in 1874. The last Willem in that line broke the tradition and his first son was Eric. He named his second son Willem but the child died young, so the sequence was broken.

The tradition also created many cousins with the same name. Thus myself and three brothers all named our first son Daniel, i.e. my father's name — resulting in four cousins with the same name. Variations on Daniel have been used – Danie, Daniel, Daan and our own Daniel, pronounced in English. In other families with many boys, and living in the same town, the cousins with the same first name would be numerous. When this happened, nicknames became common to tell them apart.

**Naming the Daughters**

FOR DAUGHTERs the tradition was not as strong, but it was there:

1st born daughter: Maternal Grandmother’s name
2nd daughter: Paternal Grandmother’s name
3rd daughter: Mother's name

Our family line conforms largely to the tradition. As with the boys, infant mortality complicated the patterns.

Nicknames tended to change over time. Philip’s mother-in-law, Sophia Pasman was known as Fijtje (in Dutch the phia part of Sophia was pronounced like feya). Catharina is a common Morkel name dating back to Philip’s wife, Catharina Pasman. Nicknames changed from Trijn or Trijntje to Kitty in later times, and to proper names such as Karen and Katrina.
43 Origin of the Morkel Name

I found three versions for the origin of the Morkel name.
The third, the frontier version, is the more convincing.

St Mauritius

According to the historians who assisted P.W. Morkel with the history and family tree for the family, the origin of the Morkel name can be traced back to medieval Saint Mauritius. This was shortened to St. Maurus, while the German version Moritz was also varied to Maritz. Maurus developed a nickname Moro, and this in turn evolved a diminutive in old German Morico which became Mörike. Another version of the diminutive was Morilo, which became Morkel and in German Mörkel.

Mushrooms

It is possible that the name came from the Morel mushroom (in German: Morchel, and in Danish: Morkel). Thus the family were mushroom gatherers (Pilzsammler). The Morel is a gourmet mushroom with its head a characteristic brain coral like appearance.

Border or Frontier

Melchior traced the Morkel/Markel family of Butzbach in Hessen Germany back to 1383. The etymology of the word mark (marche) is border, frontier or boundary, and for mörk, forest. Thus a man from the frontier (country) might have evolved into Markel and Marckel. In the family tree by Melchior the name is spelled ‘Morkel’ for the first time in 1535, for Emmerich Morkel, the younger mayor (jüngerer burgermeister) of Butzbach. His descendants were variously Morckel, or Morkel, with the latter used consistently in the Butzbach church books from 1651 onwards.
Timeline for Haplogroup I.

50kya  Migration ex Africa. About 50,000 years ago, migration of Suprahaplogroup F out of Africa to the Levant. 234

28 - 24kya  Haplogroup I spins off. About 24 to 28,000 years ago the Haplogroup I formed as a distinct group on its own and spread into southern Europe. It is associated with Gravettian and Aurignacian cultures of the upper-paleolithic characterized by a stone-tool industry with small pointed blades used for big-game hunting reindeer and mammoth. People in the Gravettian period also used nets to hunt small game. 235

20-18kya  Ice sheets and glaciers. About 18 to 20,000 years ago. A period of extreme cold during the Late Glacial Maximum, with ice sheets and glaciers spreading over northern Europe. Two significant pockets of refuge from the glacial reach existed, one associated with subclade I2a in the Balkans, and one associated with I1 and I2b1 in the Franco-Cantabria region both sides of the Pyrenees. Haplogroup R co-existed with I in these refuge areas.

16kya  Climate warming. Northwards migration into central Europe. 236

13-11.5kya  Younger Dryas Big Freeze. About 13,000 years ago the climate changed abruptly with intense freezing weather for about 1,300 years, causing hardship and interrupting human progress. 237

11kya  Mesolithic. Holocene warming commences. Shrinking ice sheets and glaciers allowed human migration northwards eventually reaching Scandinavia. Mesolithic stone tools used. Human civilization begins with a transition from hunter-gathering to farming and settlements. 238

4kya  Bronze Age tools introduced into Europe. Megaliths are built between 6kya - 3kya.

3kya  Iron Age in Europe.

kyo = thousand years ago

FINALLY

250
Deep Ancestry

Paternal y–DNA tests show that I am:
Haplogroup I, Subclade I1 (M253+ Terminal SNP Z382)
y-DNA Chromosomes are handed down from father to son, and my Haplogroup I1 would be common to the whole Morkel family. This I haplogroup has been called ‘Europe’s Native sons’ because it is not found outside Europe, except for recent (past 400 years) migrations to the colonies such as South Africa, Australia and the Americas.

Distribution of y-DNA Haplogroups in Europe

*After J.D. McDonald*
It is strange to think that our ancestors hunted mammoth and reindeer using stone age tools, but that is what they did. There is more about DNA deep ancestry on our website.

Haplogroups and subclades are identified by analysing STRs (short tandem repeats) in the DNA of an individual. My test was for 67 STRs as listed on our website. Art Morrical of Chicago found that 66 of my STRs coincided with his test which was for 111 STRs. I have upgraded to his level and there are only 5 mutational differences between us. Art is descended from Wilhelm Morgel who left Germany in the 1760s to settle in the US, where he changed his name to Morricle, which later became Morrical. It is highly likely that Art Morrical and the South African Morkels share a common ancestor. There is also a close match with Carsten Morkel of Butzbach with only two markers between him and Art and five between him and myself.
Stamvader Philip Morkel arrived at the Cape on 30 January 1708 on the VOC return ship *Oosterstein*.

Philip was a *constapel* (gunner) and probably suffered hearing problems later in life.

He married at the Cape and had to return to Holland to obtain his discharge. On board the *Oosterstein* happened to be the deposed governor W.A. van der Stel.

Philip married for the second time to Catharina Pasman and they settled on the farm *Onverwacht*, which she inherited, in 1713.

*Onverwacht*, now *Die Bos*, now reduced by urban sprawl, is still in the family after 302 years with 10th generation Sarel (*Kleinjan*) Morkel on the farm.

Catharina Pasman’s 17th century *kis* (chest) is still at *Die Bos*.

Two window panes dated 1722 from the 2nd Stellenbosch church were rescued by a Morkel. They were from Philip Morkel and his sister-in-law Sibella Pasman.

The Morkel family crest was commissioned, likely by Stamvader Philip during the 1720s, based on Sibella’s window pane. There are no royal or aristocratic Morkel ancestors.

More than 80 shipwrecked sailors were hosted at *Onverwacht* after they had walked six days through wild Africa. An epic poem *Liefdekrans* hangs on the wall at *Die Bos*. It was printed in 1725 to thank Philip and his brother Willem for their generosity. A second print was lodged with the VOC and is in the Cape archive. Willem’s *Liefdekrans* has been handed down through the generations to Pete Morkel.

The slave bell at *Die Bos* was cast in Amsterdam in 1723.
• The estate inventory on the death of 2nd generation Willem Morkel listed seven farms and 113 slaves.

• In 1825, the four 3rd generation Morkel brothers had 390,000 vines under cultivation.

• The iconic dovecote at *Die Bos* was erected by 3rd generation Daniel Johannes Morkel in the early 1800's. It is similar in shape to an earlier one at *Meerlust*, owned by his cousin, P.A. Myburgh. The side courts were likely used for cock-fighting.

• Occupying British posted 10 dragoons each with rebellious 3rd generation Daniel Johannes Morkel at *Onverwacht* and brother Philip Hendrik at *Groot Paardevali*.

• Three 3rd generation Morkel brothers and neighbour M.W. Theunissen of *Vergelegen* established the town of Somerset West and the Church in 1819.

• The Morkels excelled in Rugby Union during the early 1900's with 22 Morkels playing first class rugby and there were five Morkels in the 1921 Springbok team.

• There were first class Morkel cricket players during the early 1900's. Currently, international cricketers Albie and Morné are by far the most Googled Morkels.

• Pieter Loreth Morkel was a butcher living at historic *Zonnebloem* in Cape Town in the 1880's.

• Hendrik Johannes Morkel and his brother Willem (Japie) were pioneers during the early gold rush on the Witwatersrand.

• Japie's sons Somerset (Sommie) and Douglas (Dougie) Morkel were Springbok rugby players.

• Morkels fought on both sides of the Anglo Boer War 1899 — 1902. Some had been active with the British Colonial forces before the war broke out and continued to serve in the Cape. Others lived in Transvaal and fought with the Boers.

• Arthur Loreht Rubidge Morkel and relative Gilmour Southey trekked with donkey wagons from Johannesburg to Fort Salisbury in 1891, a year after Rhodes
established the settlement there. The journey took six months. They battled swollen rivers and malaria and were overtaken by ox wagons. Arthur had to return because of Malaria but returned and established a dynasty on productive farm, Ceres and two small but productive gold mines.

- Arthur’s son Cliff Morkel and grandson Ron Morkel ran Mazuri Ranch a large cattle and wildlife property. Ron fought Mugabe’s terrorists for years before emigrating.

- 4th Generation Hendrik Johannes Morkel of Onverwacht and his family were ostracised in 1849 for breaking The Pledge and agreeing with neighbour Robert Stanford to supply food for starving convicts aboard the Neptune III anchored off Simon’s Town. Hendrik wrote a moving letter to the editor protesting innocence.

- Dirkie Morkel at the farm Bellevue in the Stellenbosch district produce and market Morkel wines, including pinotage.

- Mrs Alexander van der Byl (née Morkel) lived in style at Morgenster and Fernwood, and was a gracious hostess, entertaining society notables, including the Princes Albert and George (later George V). They were the ‘royal’ Morkels.

- Willem (Dooley) Morkel was a leader with the Bellville Cricket Club. His sons Denys and Ray were outstanding cricketers during the 1920s.

- 9th Generation vet Pete Morkel is known for his work saving rhinos, elephant and giant sable in African countries such as Congo, Chad, Zambia and Angola.

- P.A. Morkel established a para–military group ‘Fighting Chamber of Commerce’ in the 1890’s in Blantyre, Nyassaland (Malawi) to assist the British Forces. He returned to Middelburg Transvaal and was prominent as Mayor and winning prizes for his horse teams.

- Dan Morkel saved Ernest Brockman being savaged by a lion. They were working during the 1890’s on Rhodes’ Telegraph project in Mashonaland.

- An unknown Morkel was badly disfigured being licked in the face by a lion while recuperating from malaria.
FINALLY

- The youngest of the 3rd generation brothers Hercules, settled on Welgelegen, currently the Erin Vale golf estate. He died relatively young at 41. Several of his descendants settled on farms along the Rivier Zondereind in the Overberg.

- 5th Generation Hercules Adriaan Morkel lived at Nelspoort in the Karoo. He was divorced from his first wife Charlotte Amelia Londt and had five children with Flora Simon. The mixed race Morkels from the latter union lived at Beaufort West, Cape Town, Canada and Australia. A later descendant, Gerald Morkel, became mayor of Cape Town and premier of the Western Cape.

- Reverend I.D. Morkel formerly of the Dutch Reformed Mission Church, formed a new church, Calvin Protestant Church, in protest against apartheid.

- The Muslim Rhoda family are descended from a Javanese slave girl Kandaza (later Rhoda) from the Morkel farm Voorburg. The Christian Rhodas have a strong and plausible tradition that they are descended from Rhoda and either Daniel Johannes from Onverwacht or Willem Morkel of Voorburg.

- Records dating back to 1383 in Butzbach Germany show the name Markel changing to Morkel around 1535.

- The y-DNA of the author and thus the Morkels, is haplogroup I, subclade I1. this haplogroup is sometimes called the 'the sons of Europe' because it was confined to Europe (except for recent migrations). It spun off about 25,000 years ago from haplo group F which migrated through the Middle East from Africa.

- Art Morrical of Chicago shares a DNA profile with myself (and thus the Morkel family) in which there are only five mutations in 111 STR markers. Art's ancestor, a German, Wilhelm Morgel arrived in the USA around 1760's, and changed his name to Morricle. Morgel and Morkel likely came from a common ancestor.

- 20 of the 33 Morkel names in the Namibia telecom directory are from Rehoboth.

- Our genealogy on the website contains 2,207 names, including spouses and some extended family. There remain major gaps particularly for Morkels born after the 1950's. I estimate we are missing around one to two thousand Morkel names.
46 Epilogue

WE HAVE reached the end of our journey. And what a story it is — Stamvader Philip on perilous voyages to the far east in the old sailing ships; establishing a farm that would be in the family for 300 years; hosting shipwrecked sailors; the church window panes of 1723; founding a town and a church; food for hungry convicts on the Neptune, breaking the pledge and being ostracised in the community; sport internationals in rugby and cricket; saving Brockman from the lion; being licked in the face by a lion; the Blantyre fighting Chamber of Commerce; fighting on both sides in the Anglo Boer War; pioneering in Rhodesia; fighting Mugabe’s terrorists; saving Rhinos and elephant from poachers; founding a new church; and much more.

There was much to tell, but it is also opportunistic — I reported what is available, and there are big gaps in our story. There is much more to find out about the family. Our website will welcome contributions to fill in the gaps.

A limited number of names dominate. Willem, Hendrik Johannes, Daniel Johannes, Philip and Hercules names abound in the family. To limit confusion I have used the alpha numeric system (a,b,c etc for generations, and 1,2,3 etc for siblings). There are many carrying the same last two digits, but using the full code would have been tedious. I therefore provided many family trees in the book. On our website there is the most complete genealogy for the Morkel family of Southern Africa that I am aware of. But, it is still very inadequate with gaps, particularly after the 1960s. I have made liberal use of it in the book, and the genealogy is work-in-progress on the website.

At funerals and in obituaries we usually speak well of the deceased. ‘Having listened to an eulogy, one wonders how they managed to fold the wings into the coffin’. Some of this goodwill is carried into family history. I was fortunate that there were much to admire and be proud of, but an historian must stay as objective as possible. My aim has been to report as factually as I could.

Values and practices change over time. For example harsh punishments were common three hundred years ago in most societies, and we do not use present day values to condemn them. This is relevant when reporting that the Morkels, like everyone else in those days, owned slaves. Arabs and Africans participated in capturing,
trading and owning slaves as vigorously as Europeans. While owning a human being is totally abhorrent, it dates back to times immemorial, and sadly the practice continues around the world to this day\textsuperscript{243}.

It is valid to inquire how the family treated their slaves. There are hints scattered through the book. While a firm master servant relationship would have been maintained (John Herschel tells of a Morkel wife scolding slaves), there are no indications of brutal treatment often depicted in movies and novels. These were family farms, not Caribbean or American cotton or sugar plantations run by overseers with absentee landlords demanding maximum production for profits.

A few snippets can help: An 18\textsuperscript{th} century moppie (ditty) by liberated slaves where ‘rich Mr Morkel’ is praised for ruling with heart and mind; a traveling party arriving at Onverwacht towards the evening after the owners had retired for the night, being welcomed by a slave who provided shelter and bedding for the night; slaves participating in the celebrations when they were first among the farms to complete the grape harvest.

The final example is not about slaves, but it is still relevant. Second generation Willem Morkel’s wife rescued and reared a Khoi baby that was left to die on a tree branch over the river. The care of Catharina Morkel in saving the child and the anecdotes above does not fit a narrative of how brutally whites treated blacks and slaves. I grew up with an awareness of privilege and the obligations that went with it, a sense of noblesse oblige if you will. This fits in well with the history of the family.

Morkels from Southern Africa can now be found in countries around the globe, including the UK, U.S., Canada, Australia and New Zealand. I hope our book will be of interest to members of the family, and also others, informing of our rich history. I am continuing to add to our website as new information comes along.

\textbf{André Morkel, 2015, revised Aug 2017.}

\textit{Nedlands, Western Australia.}
BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Broughton Weldon, 1933. 'The Story of the Morkels. How South Africa's most famous Football Clan was Founded'. *The Cape Argus*. 14.10.1933.
- Fouché, Leon, 1914. *The Diary of Adam Tas* [https://archive.org/details/diaryofadamtas00tas](https://archive.org/details/diaryofadamtas00tas)

• Leibbrandt.  *Manuscript book No. 24*, p.54 Cape Archives.


• Resolutions of the Council of Policy of Cape of Good Hope. Cape Town Archives Repository, South Africa. Reference Code C. 63, pp. 2-79

• Rhoda, Ebrahim 2008. ‘The Origin of The Rhoda Family of The Strand’ and “Researching family roots and the Strand Muslim community: from ‘Voorburg’ to Lower Gordon’s Bay Road, Strand”

• Rhoda, Rodney undated. *One of the Somerset West Rhodas*. Published privately.


• Theal, George McCall, 1902. *Records of the Cape Colony, June 1821- August 1822*. [www.archive.org]


General Index

Altena farm, 38, 149
Amiens, Treaty of, 55, 58
Anglo-Boer War, Morkels on both sides, 197 – 204
Anti-convict Agitation, 143 – 148
Australia, moving to, Margaret Thebus, 232

Constapel, (Artillerist), 3, 9
Baptism entries, Gert Thomas Morkel, p221
Barnard, Andrew, Colonial Secretary 45, 57
Barnard, Lady Anne, 45
Batavian Republic governing the Cape, 58 – 60
Beaufort West Morkels, 219 – 236
Belleville Cricket Club, 182
Bellevue, Bottelary, Stellenbosch, 167, 169 – 171
Bellevue Homestead, 171
Blaauwberg Strand, battle of, 59
Broadlands, 174
Brakkefontein, 35, 36, 207 –210
Breaking the Pledge, 143 – 148
Bren gun, carried by Ron Morkel in Rhodesia, 122
British soldier diary, 94
Brockman, saved from lion attack, 189 – 194
Buitepos Hottentots Holland, 39, 40
Butzbach, Germany, 4, 5
Calvin Protestant Church, 2343 – 236
Ceres, farm Shamva, Rhodesia, 111 – 115
Charles Morkel Rugby Stadium, 155
Church, Somerset West, founding, 61 – 64
seating problems, 65, 66
Church, Stellenbosch, window panes 19, 20, 166
Cloetenburg, Outlands 165, 176
Cockfighting, 52
Crest, Morkel family 20, 21
cricket Morkels, 78 – 84
Deep ancestry, DNA analysis, 251 – 252

Die Bos, see Onverwacht
Di Capelli, Captain Paravincini, 47, 58
Diemerskraal, 157
Disa, Order of, awarded to Rev I.D. Morkel, 214
Dovecote at Die Bos, 42, 51 – 53
at Meerlust, 53
Dragoons, stationed at Morkel farms, 57
Dutch Reformed Mission Church 211, 212
Ezelsjacht, 35, 36
Family crests, 22
Fernwood, 177
Ferreiera’s camp, goldfields, 91
Fighting Chamber of Commerce, 186 – 188
Fungwe gold mine, Rhodesia, 111, 113, 1114
game ranch, Mazuri, 123, 124
Gantouw pass, later Sir Lowry’s pass, 43, 45, 64
Gantouw pass wagon wheel skidruts 45
gold prospecting and mining, 110, 111, 114
Grandfather clock at Die Bos, 49
Hamburg Archives, 4
Haplogroup I, distribution in Europe, 228
scenario of movements of haplogroup II, 230
timeline over past 30,000 years, 228
Helderberg basin with Morkel farms, 38
Herschel, Sir John 45 – 48, 132
Hessen, Germany 5, 7, 8
‘Horrible’ Morkels, 75
Housemark, 5, 6
Inyazura, Rhodesia 161
Jameson, Dr. Leander Starr, 107, 108
Komaggas, C.P. Church, 234
Krygsraad (Council of War), 55, 56
Lichtenstein, Henry, 47
Liefdekrans, 23, 29 – 31
Lion attack, Ernest Brockman 189 – 194
Lion licking Morkel in the face, 196
Lost in the bush, saved by Morkel, 195, 196

MORKEL

261
FINALLY

Mafeking, 110
Mazuri Cattle & Game Ranch, 115 – 121, 124
Medal, VOC Capt. Francois Morkel, 217
Medal Anglo–Boer War, Sgt. Ralph Morkel, 200
Meerlust, dovecote 53
Mixed race Beaufort West Morkels 219 – 236
Morgenster, 33, 172–180
Morgenster, Springbok Flats, Transvaal, 92
Moppie, Rich Mr Morkel, 32
Morkel Wines, 169, 170
Mosterts Baai, 35
Mount Morkel, Foursiesburg, 175
Mugabe, 125, 126
Murder of Jacoba A. Morkel, Ratelrivier, 90
Naming children traditions, 247, 248
Neptune III, convict ship, 143 – 147
New Zealand rugby match, 73
Oath of Allegiance, to British forces, 56
to King George III, 56
Onverwacht (later Die Bos) 13, 15, 18, 38, 41 – 50
homestead, 46
Herschel Camera Lucida Drawing 46
furniture at Die Bos, 48, 49
slavebell, 49
Oosterstein, VOC Ship, 3, 9, 11
Order of the Disa Award, 236
Origin of the Morkel name, 227
ostracised, 148
Overberg Morkel farms, 209, 210
ox wagons, Arthur Morkel 108, 109
Pinotage, Bellevue, 170
Pledge, Breaking the Pledge 145
Prul, Vergelegen camphorwood sideboard, 48
Phylloxera vastatrix, vineyard pest, 87, 134
Powdery mildew (Odium tuckeri) in vineyards, 133
Princes Albert (later George V) and Alfred, 177
Rebels, Anglo Boer War, Vryburg, 198, 212
Rebel, WWI, Rocco de Villiers, 138
Rivier Zondereind, 35, 36
Rhoda Muslim family, 239 – 240
Rhoda Christian family, 241 – 246
Rhodes, Cecil John, 105
Rugby Morkels, 68 – 77
Schonenberg, shipwreck, 23 – 28
Signal cannon, Bellevue 171
Silverbeaker awarded to Willem Morkel 54, 59
Sir Lowry’s Pass 43, 46, 64
Slavebell at Onverwacht, 49
Slaves on Morkel farms, 36, 41
Slave Kandaza & Rhoda family, 243 –246
Somerset West, founding 61 – 64
Springboks, rugby internationals, 68 –77
St Andrews School, Grahamstown, 104, 113, 118
Tangle foot squad, 136
Tennis, Dan & Kitty, Charles, Charl, 149 154 – 156
Terrorist war in Rhodesia, 121 – 123
Timeline for Haplogroup I, 250
Thebus, Margaret, 229 – 232
Thirty Years’ War 1618 – 1648 in Germany, 6, 7
treaty of Westphalia 6–8
Tomb on Onverwacht, 42, 44
Utikyk, Rivier Zondereind, 209, 210
Uitlanders, Johannesburg, 109
van der Stel, Governor W.A., 16, 39, 40
Vereeniging Morkels (cricketers), 78, 80
Vergelegen, 16, 26, 27, 39, 40, 41
sideboard made from camphor tree, 48
Vines under cultivation 41, harvesting 50
Voëlgesang, 156
VOC (Dutch East India Company), 3, 7
Archives, 3
Payrates, 9
Ships, 3
Voorburg, Bridgewater 34, 38, 41, 55, 86, 87
Waldeck Regiment, defect, 59, 60
Wild animals saved from poaching, 184
Wines, British preferential tariffs abolished, 87
Witwatersrand Goldfields Committee, 91
Welgelegen, 34
Zeederberg coach journey, 110
Zonnebloem, 89
# Index of Morkels Listed

To tell the many Morkels (315 in our book) with same or similar names apart, they are presented here as a family line with birth dates and names of spouses in brackets, followed by page numbers. It is not a Genealogy for the Morkel family, which is on our website. Even that is still incomplete with substantial gaps. It is work-in-progress and is better on the website than in the book.

Philip Morkel *(Germany ca 1650)*  2

*al* Philip Morkel *(1677 x M. Biebouw)*  2 -12

*bl* Elisabeth Morkel *(1711)*  2, 12

*b2* Willem Morkel *(1713)*  12

*(xx C.Pasman 1691)*  2, 13 – 18, 19– 22, 23, 27 –31

*bl* Willem Morkel *(1718 x H. C. Malan)*  2, 33 – 37, 195

*cl* Philip Hendrik Morkel *(1760)*  2, 34, 41, 55, 61–65

*dl* Willem Morkel *(1761 x A.M. Wium)*  2, 34, 41, 55, 86, 59 - 62

*d2* Willem Morkel *(1785 x E. L. Louw)*  58, 86

*e2* Hendrik Johannes Morkel *(1810 x G. A. Louw)*  86

*f4* Hendrik Johannes Morkel *(1842 x W. J. Moll)*  86, 91 –92

*g12* Somerset West Morkel *(1884 x S. Kruger)*  86, 92, 93

*f5* Lamberts (Lammie) Dirk Petrus *(1844 x M. M. Louw)*  99 -102

*g1* Hendrik Johannes Morkel *(1879)*  100

*g2* Maria Sarah Magdalena Morkel *(1882)*  100

*g3* Geertruida Anna Morkel *(1883)*  100

*g4* Jacobus (Jim) Gideon Morkel *(1887 x H. C. Meintjes)*  100

*h1* Stella Sybil Morkel *(1911 x W. Knott)*  100

*h2* Christina Johanna Morkel *(1914)*  100

*h3* Hendrika Christina Morkel *(1914 x De Wet Tolmay)*  100

*h4* Jacobus Gideon Morkel *(1916 x M. E. Visser)*  100

*h5* Willem (Bill) Albertus Jacobus Morkel *(1919 x D. Maas)*  100, 101

*i1* Christine Heather Morkel *(1941 x C. Brown)*  100, 102

*i2* Jacobus (Jim) Gideon Morkel *(1944 x V. G. Albon)*  100 102

*j1* James David Morkel  100, 102

*j2* Douglas William Morkel  100, 102

*i3* Hendrikus Willem Morkel *(1946 V. Wilmot)*  100, 102

*j1* Tracy-Lee Morkel *(1971)*  100

*j2* Dricky Morkel *(1973)*  100

*i4* Willem Morkel *(1947 x M. D. Diamond)*  100, 102

*j1* Welma Morkel *(1970)*  100

*j2* Willem (Wim) Albertus Morkel *(1971)*  100

*j3* Kathleen Morkel *(1972)*  100

*j4* Hannes Morkel *(1975)*  100

*i5* Dorothy Morkel *(1951 x E. Butler)*  100, 102

*i6* Filippus (Fil) Morkel *(1959 x J. E. Groenewald)*  99–102
j1 Bill Morkel (1980 x N. Human) 100, 102
j2 Marique Morkel (1983) 100, 102
h6 Maria Magdalena Morkel (1921) 100
h7 Debora Catharina Morkel (1927 x Greyling) 100
g5 Hardie L.S. Morkel (1891) 100
g6 Hester Leonora Morkel (1893 x B. Stapleton) 100
g7 Debora Helena Morkel (1896 x H. van Vuuren) 100
f6 Willem (Japie) Morkel (1845 x J. H. Maritz) 86, 93–94,
g2 Hendrik Johannes (Harry) Morkel (1876) 93, 186, 191
g3 Gerhardus Maritz Morkel (1878 x F. F. Matthews) 93, 94, 186, 191
h1 William Somerset Theodore (1907 x J. C. J. Botha) 95
i1 Gerritt Maritz Morkel (1937 x M. S. Mouton) 95
j1 William Somerset Theodore Morkel (1966 x P. G. Smith) 95
k1 William Somerset Theodore (Theo) Morkel (2000) 95
k2 Philip Germand Morkel (2003) 95
j2 Marina Morkel (1966 x M. J. Van Tonder) 95
j3 Johannes Stephanus Morkel (1969 x Leoti Goosen) 95
k1 Gerrit Maritz Morkel (1998) 95
k2 Karla Morkel (2005) 95
i3. Frederick William C. (Willem) Morkel (1945 x T. M. Kok) 95.96
j1 Johan Bruwer Morkel (1973 x A. M. Steyn) 95, 96
k1 Danielle Morkel (2003) 95, 96
k2 Karah Morkel (2006) 95, 96
j2 Christiaan (Tiaan) Willem Morkel (1976 x L. De Wet) 95, 96
k1 Chad Christiaan Morkel (2007) 95.96
j3, Karin Morkel (1980) 95, 96
i4 Lourens Morkel (1947 x÷ M. F. M. Engelbrecht xx Z.N. Lessing) 96, 97
j1 Llewellyn Morkel (1975 x Tradie Schenk) 96, 97
j2 Leonard Morkel (1978 x= M. El. Van Wyk) 96, 97
k1 Reneshke Morkel (2003) 96, 97
k2 Nathan Morkel (2003) 96, 97
h3 Gerhardus Maritz (Bill) Morkel (1914 x T. Ehlers) 97, 98
i1 Dennis Maritz Morkel (1939 x E. M. van Niekerk) 97, 98
j1 Catherine (Cathy) Elizabeth Morkel (1964) 97, 98
j2 Jennifer (Jen) Louise Morkel (1970) 97, 98
j3 Carol Anne van Niekerk Morkel (1959 x÷ B. Jurgens) 97, 98
i2 Clifford Morkel (1940) 97, 98
i3 Joan Morkel (1946 x S. Sepp) 97, 98
i4 Desmond Morkel (1949 x S. Marion) 97, 98
j1 David Morkel (1970 x÷ J. V. Archer) 97, 98
k1 Daniel Morkel (2004) 97, 98
k2 Samuel Morkel (2006) 97, 98
j2 Belinda Morkel (1974 x W. M. Malan) 97, 98
William Somerset (Sommie) Morkel (1879) 69, 77, 186, 191, 192
Stephanus Kimberley (Steve) Morkel (1881) 92, 93, 101, 186
Douglas Francis (Dougie) Morkel (1885) 69, 71, 72, 77, 92, 93
John Vernon Bester Morkel (1890) 93
Pieter Loreth Morkel (1818 x S. P. Wessels) 96 – 90
Jacoba Alida Morkel (1841 – 1871) 90
Pietter Loreth Morkel (1818 x S. P. Wessels) 86 – 90
Jacoba Alida Morkel (1841 – 1871) 90
Pietter Loreth Morkel (1818 x S. P. Wessels) 86 – 90
MORKEL

265
FINALLY

h1 Hendrik J. Theron Morkel (1926 x Paddy Geeringh) 128, 152 – 154
i1 Daniel Johannes Morkel (1953 x A. Wade) 154
   j1 Hendrik Wade Morkel (1980 x C. E. Pretorius) 154
      k1 Dané Antoinette Morkel 154
      k2 Mila Elizabeth Morkel 154
      k3 Daniel Henri Morkel 154
   j2 Lieze-Mari Morkel (x J.P. Duvenhage) 154
   j3 Richard Wade Morkel 154
   j4 Daniel Wade Morkel 154
i2 Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1956 xx F. R. Martin) 154
   j1 Daniel William Morkel 154
   j2 Christian André Morkel 154

h2 Charl Theran Morkel (1928 x Lindi Sadie) 69, 128, 154– 156
i1 Daniel Francois Morkel (1961 x A. v.d. Merwe) 155, 156
   j1 Charl Francois Morkel 147
   j2 Liza-Alet Morkel 147
   j3 Frans Daniel Morkel 147
   j4 Carli Morkel 147
i2 Maria Magdalena (Maryke) Morkel (1962 x H. Van Niekerk) 155, 156
   j1 Hendrik Du Toit Van Niekerk 156
   j2 Lindi Van Niekerk 156
   j3 Charles Morkel Van Niekerk 156
i3 Catherina Elizabeth (Karen) Morkel (1964 x N. A. Cilliers) 155, 156
   j1 Nicolaas Cilliers 156
   j2 Charl Morkel Cilliers 156
   j3 Henri Cilliers 156
i4 Charl Ernst Morkel (1967 x A. Steenkamp) 149, 155, 156
   j1 Charl Theron Morkel 156
   j2 Aneldi Morkel 156

h3 Daniel Theron Morkel (1929 x Nita Heydenrych) 128, 152, 156– 158
i1 Claudia Morkel (1955 x J. S. Kruger) 156 – 158
   j1 Johan Stefan Kruger 156, 158
   j2 Danie Morkel Kruger 156, 158
   j3 Anria Kruger 156, 158
i2 Daniel Johannes Morkel (1956 x J. Schonken) 156 – 158
   j1 Daniel Johannes Morkel 156, 158
   j2 Jeanne-Maré Morkel (x A. Slabbert) 156, 158
   j3 Philip Frederick Morkel (x S. L. Bekker) 156, 158
      k1 Jaycee Morkel 156, 158
      k2 Philip Morkel 156, 158
i3 Ernst Frederick Heydenrych Morkel (1958 x K. L. v.d. Spuy) 156 – 158
   j1 Ernst Henri Morkel 156, 158
   j2 Daniel Frederick Morkel 156, 158
André Theron Morkel (1932, author x B. E. Retief) 128, 158, –160
j1 Daniel Retief Morkell (1965 x K. Moore) 159,160
j2 Anna Lucy Morkell 159,160
i2 André Retief Morkel (1967 x Kiersten Gregg) 159,160
ji Charles André Morkel 159, 160
i3 Philip Retief Morkel (1969 x M. Fender) 159,160
j1 Sophia Fender Morkel 159,160
j2 Hannah Fender Morkel 159,160
i4 Charl Retief Morkel (1974 x V. G. Graff) 159,160
j1 Heidi Barbara Graff Morkel 159,160
j2 Paige Christiane Morkel 159,160

Maria Dorothea Louw Morkel (1897 x A. H. Broeksma) 135 – 138
Sophia Margaretha (1899 x A.H. Broeksma) 135 – 138

Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel (1825 x E.A. Morkel) 77
Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel (1865 x S.C.B. Myburgh) 77
Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel (Harry) (1888) 77,68, 69,74,75
Johannes Albertus Morkel (Royal) (1894) 68, 69, 73,74,77

Esther Elizabeth Morkel (1813) 77
Philippus Albertus Myburgh (Albert) Morkel (1883) 68, 69,72,76,77
Pieter Gerhard (Gerrit) Morkel (1888) 68, 69,72,76,77
Johannes Albertus (Hannes) Morkel 76,77
Jan Willem Hurter (Jack) Morkel (1890) 68, 69,73,77
William Herman Morkel (1849 x M. M. Myburgh) 77
William Herman (Boy) Morkel (1885) 68, 69,70,74,77
Philip Hendrik Johannes Morkel (1841 x M. G. Freischl) 77, 162
Carolus Frederick Morkel (1870 x B. H. R. Southall) 198, 202
Philip William Morkel (1907) front pages, 4
Michiel Jurgens Freischl Morkel (1877) 198, 202
Johannes Gysbertus (Bertie) Morkel (1883x H. Clother) 68, 76, 77, 161, 162
John Clother Morkel (1923, A.D. Turner-Dauncey) 77, 161– 163
Rozanne Morkel (1953 x Chris Lund xx John Winter) 162, 163
Philip Morkel (1955 x A. Creech) 162, 163
John Morkel (1983 x K. Greeff) 162, 163
Kate Morkel (2014) 162, 163
Jack Morkel (2014) 162, 163
Bryan Morkel (1986) 162, 163
David Morkel (1995) 162, 163
Roger Morkel (1957 x K. Rock) 162, 163
Chris Morkel 162, 163
Jason Morkel 162, 163
Karen Morkel (1959 x K. van Lelyveld) 162, 163
d8 Daniel Johannes (Dik Daniel) Morkel (1801 x A. E. v d B Cloete) 41, 128, 164 – 166
e4 Daniel Johannes O’Flinn Morkel (1836 x A. J. le Sueur) 19, 128, 164, 166
e5 Dirk Cloete Morkel (1838 x S. J. Neething) 128, 164, 166
f1 Daniel Johannes Morkel (1862) 164, 167
f2 Johannes Henoch Neethling Morkel (Oom Jan) (1864 x C. W. Neethling) 164, 167
f3 Anna Margaretha Morkel (1866) 164
f4 Dirk Cloete Morkel (1869 x M. W. Krige) 164
g2 Pieter Krige (P.K.) Morkel (1905 x E. I. A. Malan) 164, 169
g5 Daniel Johannes Morkel (1918) 164
h2 Dirk Cloete Morkel (1951) x Heidie Smit 164, 169 – 171
f5 Susanna Johanna Morkel (1893) 164
f6 Jeannie Francouise Morkel (1875) 164
d9 Willem Morkel (1803 x I. M. Zeederberg) 128, 172, 173
e1 Daniel Johannes Morkel (1832 x M.A. van der Byl) 172, 181 – 183
f1 Willem (Dooley) Morkel (1864 x M.A.A. van Breda) 78, 172, 181 – 183
g1 William Algernon Kingsmill (Algy) Morkel 181, 182
g2 Alexander van der Byl (Alec) Morkel 181
g3 Frank James Sievwright Morkel (1898 x M. de Kock) 181, 183
h1 William Francis van der Byl Morkel (1931 x S. J. Jefferson) 181, 185
i1 David Francis Morkel (1956) 181, 185
i2 Michael Philip Morkel (1957 x G. Strever) 181, 185
i3 Claire Michelle Morkel (1957 x P. Gargan) 181, 185
i4 Peter van der Byl Morkel (1960 x Estelle De Klerk) 181, 184, 185
h2 Lorraine Morkel (1941 x T. Lithgow) 181
g4 Denys Paul Beck Morkel (1906) 78 – 80, 181
g5 Raymond Kenneth Bellville (Ray) Morkel (1908) 78 – 80, 181
f3 Paul Andries Morkel (1868 x J. Schulz) 172, 186 – 188
f4 Daniel Johannes (1869) 172, 189 – 194
f7 Lt. Col. Roelof Abraham Zeederberg (Ralph) Morkel (1873) 172, 198, 201
e2 Roelof Abraham Morkel (1833 x H. M. F. du Plessis) 172
f2 Willem (1880 – 1949, F.A. Potgieter), 198, 199
f6 Sgt Roelof Abraham Zeederberg (Ralph) Morkel (1867) 172, 198, - 201
f9 Jan Frederik Munnik Morkel (1872) 172, 198, 199
e3 Margaret Elizabeth Morkel (1835 x A. van der Byl) 172, 177 – 180
e4 Willem Morkel, GP (1837 x A. C. L. de Wet) 172, 174
f7 Daniel Gustavus Morkel (1876) 172, 175, 198
e5 Hendrik Johannes Louw Morkel, (1838 x J. M. M. van Breda) 172, 175
f4 Alexander Jacobus Morkel, (1871 x C. de Villiers) 172, 175
f12 Daniel Johannes Andries (Andrew) Morkel (1882 - 1965) 69, 77, 172
e7 Maria Dorothea Morkel (1841 x Capt C. J. Barnett) 172, 180
f1 Zaida Barnett 172, 180
e8 Pieter G. J. Morkel (1844 x M. S. Theunissen) 172, 176
f6 Nicolaas J.H. Morkel (1877 x E. E. Roux) 172, 176
MORKEL

c7 Hercules Morkel (1767 x Helena Munnik) 2, 34, 206 – 208
d3 Willem Morkel (1795 x J.E.A. Dreier) 206, 209
f2 Willem Aron Morkel 1851 x Helena Catharina Roos 209
h3 Willem Aron (Bill) Morkel (1928) 208
h4 Paul Albert Roos Morkel (1930 x CMM van der Westhuizen) 208
g2 Jacobus Petrus Morkel (1892 x D. P. du Toit) 209
g3 Willem Morkel (1893 x S. S. Geldenhuis) 209
f11 Hercules Morkel (1870 - 1927 x E. M. du Toit) 209
g5 Daniel Francois Morkel (1901 x M. J. Viljoen) 209
g8 Stephanus Petrus Morkel (1907 x S. J. Viljoen) 209
g10 Josias Johannes Morkel (1911 x C. J. Pretorius) 210
e8 Willem Lodewyk Morkel (1843 – 1898 x M. B. Le Roux) 210
f1 Willem Morkel (1866 – 1919 x E. A. Malan) 210
h4 Abraham Daniel van der Merwe Morkel (x R. Mong) 210
g5 Gabriel Stephanus Morkel (1898 x S. du Toit) 210
f9 Wouter de Vos Morkel (1884 – 1936 x M. Groenewald) 210
e1 Hercules Morkel (1821) 206, 218
e2 Johannes Augustus Morkel (1823 x C.C. Marais) 206
e8 Willem Lodewyk Morkel (1843 x M. B. Le Roux) 206
d4 Hercules Morkel (1798 x G. W. de Vos) 66, 206, 208
e1 Wouter Ryk Dirk Morkel (1821 x M. C. J. de Wit) 206
d5 Gerhardus Morkel (1799 x J. F. Brand) 206
e1 Hercules Adriaan Morkel (1823 x Helena C. A. Londt) 206, 222
with Flora Simon 206, 220 – 222
f5 Gert Thomas Morkel (1857 x M. Theron) 220 – 222
g1 Herklaas James Morkel (1878) 222
g2 Jane Dorothea Morkel (1880) 222
g3 Samuel William Morkel (1881 x D. Augustus) 222 – 225
h1 Rev. Isaac David Morkel (1910 x S. Isaacs) 222, 224, 225, 225, 233 – 236
h2 Gerald (Gert), 222, 224.228
h3 Samuel Morkel (x V. La Vita) 220, 223, 228
h4 Elizabeth Morkel (x H. Ehrenreich) 220, 223, 228
h5 Hercules (Moorie) Morkel (x I. Robertson ) 220, 223, 224.228
i1 Gerald Morkel 226
h6 Dolfina Morkel 222, 225, 228
h7 Daniel Morkel (x C. Ehrenreich) 222, 226, 228
h8 Mary Morkel (x H. Petersen) 222, 227, 228
h9 Margaret Morkel (1924 x W. C. Lodewyk) 222, 228 – 232
i1 Carol Lodewyk (x Ackerman) 228, 229
i2 Margaret Lodewyk (x B. Thebus) 228 – 232
h10 Henry Morkel (x E. Steenkamp) 222, 227, 228
g4 Henry Gert Morkel (1884) 222
g5 James John (Jim) Morkel L (x E. Augustus) 222
g6 Florence Margaret Morkel (x Hofmeester)  222
g7 Mary Sarah Johanna Morkel (x Murray)  222
g8 William Thomas Morkel  222
g9 Dorothea (Dora) Charlotte Morkel (x Roux)  222
d7 Philip Hendrik Morkel (1804 x Hester Loedolff)  77, 206
e1 Philip Hendrik Morkel (1835 x J. H.Dempers)  77, 206
f4 Philip Hendrik Morkel (1861 x C. J. W. Destroo)  77
f2 Henry William Morkel (1894)  77, 206
f5 Antonie Charles Morkel (1863, x A. M. Esterhuizen)  211–218
g1 Johanna (Hannie) Hermina Dempers Morkel (1891 x P.H. Morkel)  212
f1 Philip Henry Morkel (1892 x H. H. Krige)  212, 218
h2 Willem Adolph Krige Morkel (1923 x Pauline Offer)  218
i1 Philip Francois Morkel (1948 x I. A. Kirschinger)  218
j1 Renier Morkel (1977 x A. Lambert)  218
j2 Hildegard Morkel (1978 x A.J. Reynekel)  218
i2 Krige Willem Adolph Morkel (1949 x M. Nel)  218
j1 Riaan Krige Morkel (1976)  218
j2 Jeanne Morkel (1979)  218
i3 Victor Juan Morkel (1953 x F. H. Coetzee)  218
j1 Estelle Morkel (1985)  218
h3 Alida Maria Morkel (1924)  218
h4 Anna Villiera Morkel (1926 x Daniel de Jager)  218
h5 Ida Therma Morkel (1927 x B. Glynn)  218
h6 Carle Anton Morkel (1928 x J. M. Bredenkamp)  218
i1 Diana Morkel (1960 x N. von Schlicht)  213
i2 Karen Morkel (1961 x T.W. Lloyd)  213
i3 Carl Anton Morkel (1968 x J.de Villiers)  211–215
j1 Juliana Lara Morkel (1999)  218
j2 Mariana Joan Morkel (2004)  218
h7 Lois Morkel (1931 x G. Greeff)  218
h8 Philippus Hendrik Morkel (1936 x J. Wiersma)  218
i1 Francois Morkel (1966 x M. Jordaan)  218
j1 Paul Philip Morkel (1994)  218
j2 Cara-Jean Morkel (1996)  218
i2 Antoinette Carina Morkel (1969 x R. Armtrimaro)  218
g3 Josina (Jessie) Morkel (1894 x P.du Toit)  212
f4 Hermanus (Herman) Phillipus Ernst Morkel (1897 x S.L.Lochner)  212
g5 William (Willy) Josias Sterrenberg Morkel (1899 x C. Loubser)  212
g6 Alida (Nettie) Maria Morkel (1901 x H. Jacobs)  212
g8 Catharina (Katie) Johanna Geertruid Morkel (1905 x P.J.C. Viljoen)  212
g9 Anton (Boet) Charles Morkel (1907 x V. Logie)  212
g10 Anna (Baby) Francina Morkel (1912 x I.S. Middleton)  212

a2 Willem Philipsz Morkel  2
ENDNOTES

5. Morkel Family Tree p.120
6. GISA p.677
8. Housemarks to identify property were common in the middle ages and are still used to brand farm animals.
9. Fullbrook p.39ff
10. Fullbrook p.39ff
12. F. W. Marx, 2007 Slawespore p.30 published by the author. “A surgeon obtained his medical knowledge through an apprenticeship rather than at university. They belonged to a strong guild with strict rules and regulations. Candidates usually came from well-off families who could afford the four year course. They had to be healthy and well formed (welgeskape) between 16 and 18 years old. During the course they lived with the master surgeon and were subject to strict discipline. They accompanied their master on his rounds and had to attend lectures in anatomy, Latin and Greek. They learnt to operate, close wounds, do bloodletting and mix medicines. Each year they had to pass an examination and at the end of the course a oral examination during which other Guild members could ask questions. While they did not enjoy the status of university qualified doctors, they handled medical work and could also do dentistry and work as a barber. They were probably better suited to the hazards of ships than doctors.”
13. “Many, many years ago two young men by the name of Morkel were sent to South Africa from Germany because their father didn't want them to serve in the German army.” From “The Story of the Morkels” by Weldon Broughton, The Cape Argus 14.10.1933 reprinted in P.W. Morkel, 1961. p.55. This newspaper article about the rugby Morkels was based on interviews with members of the family at that time.
16. C. C. de Villiers, 1894, Die Geslacht Registers de Oude Kaapsche Familien, p.98.
17. Theal, George McCall History of South Africa under the Administration of the Dutch East India
18. P.W. Morkel, Family History p.1
19. Giliomee pp.9 & 13
21. Schoeman p.303
22. Schoeman p.496
23. Schoeman p.4977
24. Church of the Cape Registers, Family search website,
25. Church of the Cape Registers, Family search website,
26. MOOC8/2.87
27. Morkel, Genealogy, p.120
30. Morkel, front pages.
33. Viney & Proust p.82.
34. Ball, Richard. Familia, Jan Robbertsz.
35. Fouché, Leon. Diary of Adam Tas.
36. Fouché, Leon. Diary of Adam Tas.
37. Viney & Proust p.82
38. Fouché, Leon. Diary of Adam Tas.
FINALLY

39 Hugo & van der Bijl p225.
41 See the Groot Constantia website http://www.grootconstantia.co.za/3/home
42 Hugo & van der Bijl. p225 & 235.
43 Hugo & van der Bijl p80.
44 Hugo & van der Bijl, p82.
45 Pama, Cor, Die Groot Afrikaanse Famillieboek
47 Morkel, pp4 – 7
48 Malan. Schoonenberg
49 Malan. Email private communication.
50 Leibrandt.
53 The story is uncritically retold in: M. Diement, ‘Vergelegen treasure’, in The Strandveld – Africa’s foot of isolation (Hermanus, 2010), pp. 30-31
54 P.W. Morkel asked Miss M.K. Jeffreys, M.A., then of the Cape Archives, to translate it for him from Dutch, and this she did in 1940.
55 Thanks to Kammie (Mogamat Kamedien) who contributed this in November 2011
56 M.O.O.C 18/34 1 STB as in Annemarie Krzensinski-de Widt, 2002. (M.O.O.C refers to Master of the (Colonial) Orphan Chamber. STB refers to Stellenbosch Museum archives).
57 The Rivier Zonder Eind (lit: River without End) was a river commencing some 50 kms over the Hottentots Holland mountains that flowed east along the escarpment instead of south to the ocean. Instead of crossing the river, the early explorers travelled along the river seemingly without end. Eventually it becomes a tributary of the Breede River.
58 A Google search under Prag en Praalwette gives a long list. I used A.J. Boeseken, D.W. Krãger en A. Kieser, Drie Eeue. The sumptuary regulations imposed by Governor Tulbagh followed similar ones imposed by the VOC in Batavia. Examples are: No one but the Governor could have a gilded coach. No one below a Junior Merchant may use a large umbrella (kiepersol). Only the wife of a Junior Merchant or higher may wear silk or embroidered clothes, or velvet cloaks. No woman or girl may wear a train that touches the ground — risking a fine of 25 rixdollars. Tulbagh did not follow Batavia’s example of restricting carriages to four horses. He allowed six horses, and some used eight. Flamboyant clothes were not confined to women. Colonel Isaac Meinerzhagen for example liked trousers of red velvet or satin. He also had several coats embroidered with gold and wore blue or red handkerchiefs, and a green cravat. I suspect Willem and his family did not participate in the flamboyant behaviours of the townsfolk in Cape Town and Stellenbosch. They were busy with the daily life on their remote farms. For example Willem also did not follow the fashion of a fancy gable on his house – the drawing more than a hundred years later by Sir John Herschel shows the house with an unpretentious leg of mutton gable — the simplest possible.
60 Swellengrelbel, p334. Hendrik Swellengrelbel had extensive correspondence with Hendrik Cloete, the grandson of Sibella Pasman and owner of Nooitgedacht and Groot Constantia. In one letter he asked about the habits and lifestyles of Hottentot (Khoi) tribes. On one aspect Cloete reported that twins were undesirable and one of the twins is killed.
61 Sleigh, Die Buiteposte, p146 – 163.
62 Heap, The story of Hottentots Holland, p 21- 28
63 Heap, p27.
64 Leibrandt
65 Heap p63
66 Private communication from Jean Le Roux, Paarl. 28 September 2004
Rose Apple. Its botanical name is Eugenia Jambos. In Indonesia the word is used for a wide range of related fruits, including guava. Van Linschoten in 1596 describes Jambos as – *is een seer excellent fruyt ... van de groote van eenen Appel, heft een coleut root en witachtigh ... seer lieflic om te eaten, heft eene reuc ghelic of het rooswater waer.*

Heap, p62
Hopkins, p15.
Theal, George McCall
Fairbridge, p63.
Fairbridge, p63
Heap, p80.
Heap, p63.
Evans, p183
Morkel, P.W., p3.
Dovecotes: Commonly known as Pigeon houses, columbaria, culver houses, pigeon cotes, dove houses.

They were a common throughout Britain and across mainland Europe between the 16th and 19th centuries, but few remain and many are now in ruins. Dovecotes are specially constructed pigeon houses where pigeons were kept for a variety of purposes, but in the main as a source of food.

De Bosdari p14: ‘... the end of the 18th century forms a clear-cut dividing line between two gable-styles, and how an older style, the florid, perhaps Dutch in its origin but certainly a product of the Cape alone in its development, then reaches its zenith and abruptly, without any lengthy period of decadence intervening, is supplanted by a newer style, the neo-classical, whose hallmarks are European but no wise specifically Dutch’.

De Kock, p88-89.

‘Malays were always devoted to cocking. In the 18th century they carried their love for the game to so great a degree that it became quite a common sight to see a number of them, each with a gamecock under his arm, taking up a position at some corner or other, where they would patiently await the appearance of a rival.... Small wonder that one or two of the early visitors remarked that the most picturesque spectacles they beheld at the Cape were the battles fought by Indian game-cocks.

The most ardent supporters of cocking were those men who came from the Island of Java, and they carried their enthusiasm into even the country places. Professor Pearce in describing Meerlust, the magnificent estate on the *Eerste River* granted to Henning Huising in 1701, draws attention to the fact that a short distance from the homestead is an interesting relic in the form of a dovecot with enclosed courts on either side which, it is said, were used for cock-fighting: the heroic little birds sparring with heads stretched forward and feathers ruffled, avoiding the many fatal blows with lightning-like movements, pecking, ripping, fighting ... One can visualise, too, the eager faces of the spectators, the greedy look in the eyes of the gamblers, the hushed, tense, excited expectancy of the group who watched while the battle of death was being fought....’

Hugo & van der Byl. p116.
Morkel, P.W. p15
Brooke–Simons, p63.
Heap, p80
Heap, p80
Morkel, p16.
Morkel, p16.
Burrows, p 55.
Anderson, Chapter 12, p143 ff
Morkel p17
Heap, p82
Morkel, p17.
Anderson, p201.
FINALLY

100 Heap, p96 - 103
101 Hopkins, p31 - 33
102 1 morgen = 0.856 hectare. 600 square roods = 1 morgen.
103 Hopkins, p32.
104 Hopkins, p40.
105 Heap, p101
106 Hopkins p45 – 46
107 Much of this chapter comes from P.W. Morkel, Family History pp51 – 70. It also contains reprints of three newspaper stories by Weldon Broughton 1933 in The Cape Argus, Denys Rhoodie 1947 in Fleur and Chris Nolte 1949 in Die Burger, all referenced in the Bibliography.
108 Broughton.
109 Nolte
110 Broughton
111 Broughton
112 Greyvenstein
113 Broughton
114 Nolte
115 Evans, p 184
116 Michener, p956.
117 Morkel, P.W. Family History p45
118 Morkel, P.W. pp 52 – 53
120 Denys Morkel http://www.espncricinfo.com/southafrica/content/player/46246.html
121 Raymond Kenneth Bellville Morkel http://cricketarchive.com/Archive/Players/14/14155/14155.html
122 Albert Morkel http://www.espncricinfo.com/southafrica/content/player/46498.html
123 Malan Morkel http://www.quincric.co.za/index.php?option=com_contact&view=contact&id=1&Itemid=43
125 Morné Morkel http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/M%C3%A9_Morkel
126 Mighty Morné, The West Australian, 17 November 2014. pp 52 & 60
128 Morkel, P.W. Family History p39
129 http://www.ilovewoodstock.co.za/2012/02/zonnebloem/
130 Morkel, P.W. Family history p39
131 Village Life No. 8 October/November 2004 (Thanks to Johan van Breda for the reference)
136 Morkel, Ron pp27 – 103.
137 Ron Morkel spells his father Arthur’s middle name Loreht, which is also how it is on his gravestone. Arthur’s grandfather was Pieter Loreth Morkel and it comes from the maiden name of an ancestor, Hester Loret, daughter of a French Huguenot.
138 The Zeederberg Coaches were well-known in Southern Africa at the time. Mr. Doel Zeederberg himself seems to have been in charge of Arthur’s journey. The Zeederberg and Morkel families were connected through fourth generation Willem Morkel (1803 - 1876) of Morgenster, who was married to Isabella Margaretha Zeederberg (1809 - 1886).
139 Ron Morkel, pp107 – 202
140 Ron Morkel, pp151 –309
141 The farm Steenberg near Constantia on the Cape Peninsula has been in the Russouw and Louw family for a longer period, since 1695. The family name was not retained as it was passed on to sons-in-law. As with Die Bos, urban sprawl (a golf estate) has consumed the farm and a small portion has been held out by the Louw family - information obtained by email from Nicolette van Zyl (née Louw, 9th generation).
142 Hopkins, p39.
143 See Chapter 7, p51.
144 Evans, Herschel at the Cape pp 183 & 184
MORKEL

Brooke–Simons, Meerlust, pp 86–89
Heap, pp 54 – 55
Van Zyl, pp 194 – 194
www.klerck.info/Kwartierstaat.doc
Bateson, Charles 1974. The Convict Ships, 1787–1868,
Mitchel, Jail Journal. p139.
Heap, p55
Heap, pp 54–55.
Mitchel, Jail Journal. p156.
http://www.diemerskraal.co.za/
Gerda van Niekerk, daughter of f4 Dirk Cloete Morkel has contributed wonderful oral history of her family, starting with Dik Daniel, and others as in the chapter. Thanks also to her daughter Marianna Kritzinger and her niece Mariechen Schimmel for background about Gerda.
Information and photos for this chapter is from the Morkel wines website http://www.bellevue.co.za/
Morkel, P.W. Genealogy, p160
http://www.memoriesofrhodesia.com/pages/newsletter/memorylane/memorylane0309.html
Green, Lawrence, p125.
Heap, Peggy, p 47.
Information, quotes and excerpts about Mrs van der Byl and Morgenster are from Peggy Heap, pp 45 & 46 and P.W. Morkel pp 21 – 23.
Information, quotes and excerpts about Willem (Dooley) Morkel are from Morkel, P.W. Family History p26 & 27 and J.P. Duminy.
email message from Veterinarian Pete Morkel October 2013. Pete provided information about his grandparents, Frank and Maria and family.
“Elephants. La Course contra des Mort”. Parismatch.com 30 April – 6 May 2014 p74-81
Morkel, Family History p30
Information, quotes and excerpts about P.A. Morkel are from P.W. Morkel, Family History pp 29 – 33.
Morkel, P.W. Family History pp 27– 29
The Wide World Magazine. An Illustrated Monthly of True Narrative. Vol I. April to September 1898. London. George Newnes Ltd. Southampton St., Strand. p 225 – 233 (June 1898 edition). This was a fascinating magazine with travel and adventure stories from around the world, written in the style of that period, when the British Empire was at its peak. Its motto was “Truth is Stranger than Fiction”. Thanks Gary Brockman for the loan of the magazine.
Morkel, P.W., Family History p50
Morkel, P.W., Family History p36
Emails from Peter Weedon. British Collector of War Medals.
http://samilitaryhistory.org/vol012es.html
http://samilitaryhistory.org/vol014ng.html

275
FINALLY

http://bsap.org/hiscampaigns.html
http://www.genealogyworld.net/boer/western_m.html
http://www.angloboerwar.com/south-africa...ed-rifles

Morkel, P.W. Family history p25 & 48
Morkel, P.W. Family history p 47a & 48
Morkel, P.W. 1961, Genealogy
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stellaland
Shearing, The Rebel Record
GISA, p684
Email from Noeline Lossau
Leon J.P van Aswegen, contribution 10 Oct 21010 on Geni.com genealogy website.
MOOC 7/1/319-118 and MOOC 13/1/281 – 55 Inventory for Hercules Adriaan Morkel
http://www.whoswho.co.za/gerald-morkel-4543

Other spellings of his name include Izak and David. We standardized on the spelling in his funeral service notice. In most documents he is referred to as “I.D.”


A transcription of the oral history of the Muslim Rhoda-family was done in 1968 by Anwar Rhoda, a 6th generation Muslim Rhoda from the line of Faggedien Rhoda. The narrator was his aunt, Gadija Wentzel, nee Rhoda, who was born in 1900 and was 12 years old when Faggedien Rhoda died. I am deeply indebted to Anwar Rhoda for all this information because it enabled me to trace our forebears to Voorburg.

I have also traced the origins of the Rhodas of the Christian faith to the farms Vergelegen and De Bos in the Hottentots Holland area when the Theunissen and the Morkels were the respective owners in the early nineteen century, but that would be a story on its own.

J.Van der Byl.(1963) Eienaars van Erwe in die Stellenbosch 1693-1860 en Eienaars van Plase in die distrik van Stellenbosch 1680-1860, unpublished work (1994). I am most grateful to Dr. H. Heese of Stellenbosch University Archives for making this source available to me.

WCARS: (Western Cape Archives Records Service) HAWC 1/3/43/6/1, death registration of Faggedien Rhoda and MOOC 6/9/671, folio 1824, death notice of Samodien Rode.
WCARS: S0 6/94, Slave Register of Willem Morkel, Willem’s zoon, p. 85.
WCARS: Opgaafrol J302 to J307. The name Kameding appears on the Opgaafrol of 1834 to 1837 of Mosterd Bay. In Opgaafrol J307 for the year 1837, Hendrik Ryk de Vos, the field-cornet for Hottentots Holland indicated that Kameding [Kalamodien] refused to to sign (niet willen teken) on the census list. Ragiema Crombie, nee Rhoda narrated to the writer on 9 April 1990 at Firgrove that Kalamodien’s elder son, Faggedien, also named one of his sons Kalamdien and that Samodien’s daughter and granddaughter was named Jaria.

WCARS: 1/STB 4/1/1/4, Criminal Records 1828-1837, Case no. 697.
WCARS: S0 9/22, Mortgage Register

WCARS: SO 13/20, Appraisement of Slaves 1834-35, Return no. 396, p.34, being the list of slaves of the farm, Voorburg of Willem Morkel Junior.

222 WCARS: HAWC 1/3/43/5/1, Death registration of Momena Wentzel, nee Rhoda.

223 SO 6 /9 p.251, S.A.Archives

224 SO 6 /94 p.135, S.A.Archives

225 Cape of Good Hope : Master and Servant Addenda Documents on the Working of the Order in Council of 21st July 1846. Memorial and Reports by the Resident Magistrates on Missionary Institutions with Summary of the whole, Prepared and Printed by Order of the Legislative Council and printed in 1849. This specific report by the Resident Magistrate, D.J. van Ryneveldt, refers to the Wesleyan Missionary Institution at Somerset West. The Resident Magistrate had to submit a list of all the labourers residing on the Mission Grounds and a list of young persons above the age of 16 years residing there. In addition the age, marital status, length of residence, no of children, what work they were doing, whether they could read or write and how they were employed, is reflected. This Report lists all the labourers with their families who were staying on the 31 Erven of the Wesleyan Institution in Hottentots-Holland.


227 Rodney Tyrone Rhoda describes himself as a brown Pharmacist, Entrepreneur, Homeopath and Politician. He grew up in apartheid Kimberley and served as a member of Parliament for the National Party. His interest in the Rhoda family history is recorded in his autobiography *One of the Somerset West Rhodas*.

228 Dr Timothy Visser is a member of the Rhoda family through his mother. He has practiced as a GP in Somerset West and served as a doctor with the UN in war-torn Somalia.

229 National Health Testing Laboratory Service April 2013

230 P.W. Morkel, Family History Preface


236 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Late_Glacial_Maximum


238 http://www.wisegeek.com/what-is-the-holocene.htm


240 Art Morrical. Several email exchange commencing April 2014

241 http://www.telecom.na/index.php/online-directory-v2/?view=results&qry=Morkel&action=all

242 The Cape Colony depended on slavery for labour. See for example http://www.stamouers.com/index.php/people-of-south-africa/slaves. During the VOC settler and slave populations were roughly equal. Treatment varied from extremely brutal punishments for desertion and assault on settlers to normal master servant relationships. While they lacked the crucial component for freedom, living conditions for slaves on the Cape farms would have been better than factory workers in the English textile mills during the 1800s, or those, who for fairly trivial offences, were incarcerated in prison hulks and transported to Botany Bay and van Diemensland.

243 Kevin Bales, co-founder of Free the Slaves, has done extensive research into modern slavery. Estimates range from 21 to 36 million in slavery at the current time. https://www.freetheslaves.net/